



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

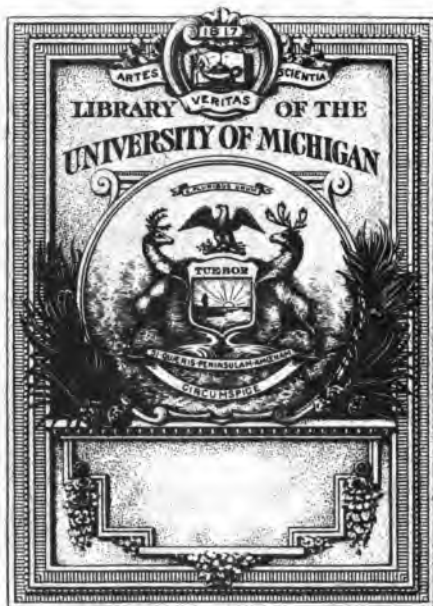
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

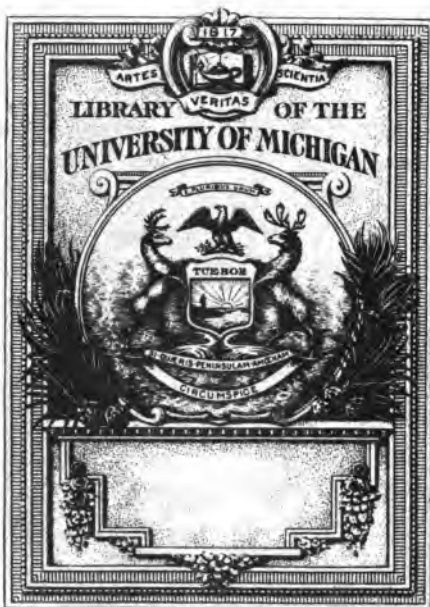
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

A 464631

868
A48
tS7
1872
v.1
cop.2









1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

31.

32.



Library of Old Authors.



AMADIS OF GAUL;

BY VASCO LOBEIRA.

TRANSLATED

FROM THE SPANISH VERSION OF

GARCIORDONEZ DE MONTALVO.

BY ROBERT SOUTHEY.

A New Edition.

IN THREE VOLUMES.

VOL. I.



LONDON:
JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,
SOHO SQUARE.

1872.
to belie

868

A48

£57


1872

v.1

cop.2

P R E F A C E.

1

 MADIS OF GAUL was written by Vasco Lobeira, a Portugeze, who was born at Porto, fought at Aljubarrota, where he was knighted upon the field of battle by King Joam of Good Memory, and died at Elvas, 1403 ; where he formed a *Morgado*, an entailed and unalienable estate, which afterwards descended to the Abreus of Alcarapinha.

The Spanish version, which is the oldest extant, is by Garciordoñez de Montalvo, Regidor of Medina del Campo. He says he has corrected it from the old originals, which were corrupted by different and bad writers, and badly composed in an ancient fashion ; that he has abridged it of many superfluous words, and inserted others of a more polished and elegant style.

The Comte de Tressan has claimed the work as a French production. It is doing too much honour to Vasco Lobeira, he says, to consider him as the author. The French translation by Nicolas d'Herberay was indeed made from the Castilian, but there is reason to believe that he only restored

it to the literature of his own country, from which it had first been taken by the Spaniards. D'Herberay *remembered* certain manuscripts of Amadis in the Picard language, and these he *thought* might be the originals which Montalvo modernized. These manuscripts, says the Comte, *might* very easily fall into the hands of the Spaniards. Philip the Good,* or Charles the Bold *might* have found them when they carried their arms into Picardy; thus they *might* get into the library of Marie of Burgundy, and her son the Archduke Philip *might* carry them into Spain. The Comte does not found his opinion entirely upon this concatenation of contingencies; he *thinks* he has seen a manuscript of Amadis, in the Romance, or what D'Herberay calls the Picard language, among Queen Christina's collection in the Vatican; from the manifest superiority of the three first books to all the continuation, he *argues* that they cannot have been written in the same country; and from their *good taste and high tone of sentiment* he *proves* that they must be originally French. This is indeed French reasoning!

Had the Comte de Tressan been versed in

* It is indeed probable that Amadis was in the Duke of Burgundy's Library, for Philip the Good married Isabel, daughter of Joam of Portugal. The children of Joam were distinguished for their love of literature. If she carried with her this romance, it is not unlikely that a French translation may have been made, anterior to Montalvo's
ion.

Portuguese literature, he might have found one single evidence in favour of his assumption. In the *Agiologio Lusitano*, T. 1, p. 480, Joze Cardoso says, that *Pedro de Lobeira* translated the History of *Amadis de Gaul* from the French language, by the order of Infante Dom Pedro, son of King Joam I. He calls him *Pedro*, says Barboza, that he may be wrong in everything. The first volume of the *Agiologio* was printed in 1652. With this single exception, the Portuguese have always ascribed the work to Vasco Lobeira ; and the authority of this tradition would alone outweigh all the possibilities of the French writer. It is substantiated by the work itself, and by old and unquestionable testimony.

At the end of the 41st chapter, vol. 1. p. 220, it is said, that Briolania would have given herself and her kingdom to Amadis, but he told her right loyally how he was another's. In the Spanish version, ff. 72, this passage follows : " But though the Infante Don Alfonso of Portugal, having pity upon this fair damsel, ordered it to be set down after another manner, that was what was his good pleasure, and not what actually was written of their loves ; and they relate that history of these loves thus, though with more reason faith is to be given to what we have before said. Briolania being restored to her kingdom and enjoying the company of Amadis and Agrayes, persisted in her love : and seeing no way whereby she could accomplish her mortal desires, she spake ve

secretly with the damsel to whom Amadis, and Galaor and Agrayes had each promised a boon if she would guide Don Galaor where he could find the Knight of the Forest. This damsel was now returned, and to her she disclosed her mind, and besought her with many tears to advise some remedy for that strong passion. The damsel then in pity to her lady demanded as the performance of his promise from Amadis, that he should not go out of a certain tower, 'till he had a son or daughter by Briolania; and they say, that, upon this, Amadis went into the tower because he would not break his word, and there because he would not consent to Briolania's desires he remained, losing both his appetite and his sleep 'till his life was in great danger. This being known in the court of King Lisuarte, his Lady Oriana, that she might not lose him, sent and commanded him to grant the damsel's desire, and he having this command, and considering that by no other means could he recover his liberty or keep his word, took that fair queen for his leman, and had by her a son and a daughter at one birth. But it was not so, unless Briolania seeing how Amadis was drawing nigh to death in the Tower, told the damsel to release him of his promise, if he would only remain 'till Don Galaor was arrived; doing thus, that she might so long enjoy the sight of that fair and famous knight, whom when she did not behold she thought herself in great darkness. This carries with it more

reason why it should be believed, because this fair queen was afterwards married to Don Galaor, as the fourth book relates.”

Here then it appears that an Infante of Portugal commanded some alteration to be made in the story: because he was displeased that Briolania should love in vain. There exists a sonnet ascribed to an Infante of Portugal, and addressed to Vasco Lobeira, praising him as the author of Amadis, and objecting to this very part of the story. It is thus printed in a work entitled *Obras ineditas dos nossos insignes Poetas dadas a luz por Antonio Lourenço Caminha. Lisboa 1791.*

SONETO.

Feito polo Senhor Infante Dom Pedro, filho do Senhor Rey Dom Joam primeiro. Outros dizem que he do Senhor Rey Dom Affonso quarto, mais provase que foi do antecedente, porque o Lubera morreo no anno de 1403.

Bom Vasco de Lubera, e de graõ sem
De pram que vos avades bem contado
O feito de Amadis o namorado,
Sem que dar ende por contar irem,
E tanto vos apprõve, e a tambem,
Que vos seredes sempre ende loado.
E antre os homes hos por homêtado,
Que vos eraõ adiante, e que era bem.
Mais porque vos fizeste a formoza
Briçanja amar endoadado hu nom,
Esto cõbade, e contra sa amarom vontade:
Ca eu hey graõ do da a ver queixosa
Por sa graõ formozura, e sa bondade,
E hor porque alfim amor no lho pagaraõ.

Tom. 1. 213.

In the reign of Joam I. says Manuel de Faria y Sousa, the Infante Don Pedro wrote the sonnets *Bom Vasco, &c., Vinha Amor, &c.*, in praise of Vasco Lobeira, the inventor of the Books of Chivalry by that of Amadis. I know not where the second of these sonnets is to be found, neither of them are among the Infante Dom Pedro's Poems, published by Joseph Soares da Sylva at the end of his *Memorias para a Historia del Rey Dom Joam I.* as copied from the Cancioneiro of Resendé; nor do I recollect them in that very rare and valuable collection, to which I cannot now refer. But it is impossible that this sonnet should have been written by either of the princes to whom it has been ascribed. The Infante Dom Pedro was but in his eleventh year when Vasco Lobeira died, and Lobeira himself must have been a boy at the time of Affonso the IVth's death. Montalvo and Manuel de Faria and the Portuguese Editor are in this point all in the wrong. If it be the composition of a royal or of a princely author, it must be King Pedro. This, however, must remain uncertain. But we may believe what Montalvo tells us that the story had been altered in compliance with the taste of some noble Portuguese. The language of this sonnet is certainly as old as the time of Joam I. It agrees with the opinion of the person whom Montalvo calls the Infante Alfonso, and it addresses Vasco Lobeira by name as the author of Amadis of Gaul.

This evidence is sufficiently decisive. It is

incontrovertibly confirmed by Gomes Eannes de Zurara, in his *Chronica do Conde Dom Pedro de Menezes*; a work written in 1463, and first published in the *Collecção de Livros Ineditos de Historia Portugueza*, 1792. He expressly says that Vasco Lobeira wrote the book of Amadis, and that the whole was his own invention. Could he have foreseen that it would have ever become a subject of controversy, his testimony could not have been more decisive. “Jaa scja, que muitos Autores cobiçosos d’allargar suas obras, forneciam seus Livros recontando tempos que os Principes passavam em convites, e assy de festas, e jogos, e tempos allegres, de bue se nom seguia outra cousa, se nom a deleitação delles mesmos, assy como som os primeiros feitos de Ingraterra, que se chamava Gram Bretanha, e assy o *Livro d’ Amadis como quer que soamente este fosse feito a prazer de hum homen, que se chamava Vasco Lobeira, em tempo d’El Rey Dom Fernando, sendo toda-las cousas do dito Livro fingidas do Autor.*” T. 2. p. 422.

Therefore it can be no longer doubted, that Vasco Lobeira is the author of Amadis of Gaul. The romance was written towards the close of the fourteenth century; if in Fernando’s reign, before 1383, but certainly after Edward III. had laid claim to the crown of France, and when the Court of Windsor was the most splendid in Europe. This is evident from the work itself. Had it been written later, even by one generation, Montalvo

could not have complained of its rude and ancient style.

Barboza says the original work was preserved in the family of the Aveiros. If this copy has escaped the earthquake, it may probably be traced from the wreck of that family; and it is greatly to be wished that the Royal Academy of Lisbon would publish it for the honour of Portuguese Literature, to which that Academy has already rendered such essential services, and which by other nations is little valued, only because it is little known.

2

TRESSAN claims for his countrymen only the three first books; in the fourth, he says, the Spanish taste begins to predominate; but the ridiculous anachronisms which he particularizes, are all interpolated by D'Herberay. King Lisuarte's train of artillery, his powder, his bullets, his bombs and his culverines, are not to be found in the Spanish version. Cannon are once mentioned, as they are in Hamlet; but as in Hamlet it is a casual absurdity, the effect of carelessness, not of an ignorance which would have infected the whole work. The beginning of the fourth book is indeed very inferior in interest to what precedes it: the business and bustle of adventure are succeeded by long speeches, and a needless detail of the different embassies. How much of this prolixity is to be

attributed to what Montalvo calls his more polished and elegant style, it is now impossible to ascertain. Yet this prolixity has its effect; if it provokes impatience, it also heightens expectation; it is like the long elm avenues of our forefathers, we wish ourselves at the end, but we know that at the end there is something great.

The Comte was of opinion that the original romance concluded with the rescue of Oriana. This would have been an unsatisfactory conclusion, nor would it have compleated the author's design. Amadis is not safe, and cannot be happy while King Lisuarte is his enemy; the preeminence of Oriana above all her sex is not proved, till she has atchieved the adventure of the Forbidden Chamber. The reconciliation of her husband and her father, and this triumph which proves that, as the best and fairest of women, she alone is worthy to be the wife of the best and bravest of men, must be the work of the original author, unless he left the story incomplete. But there is no reason to suspect that the work of Vasco Lobeira was not compleated. That, as well as the rudeness of the language, would have been mentioned by Montalvo; he would have claimed the merit of finishing the story, as well as of polishing the style.

With the celebration of the marriage, the story obviously concludes. I have ended here, and left the reader to infer that Amadis and Oriana, like the heroes of every nursery tale, lived very happy after. The chapters which follow in the Spanish

are evidently added to introduce the fifth book, or what Montalvo, in something like a Quack's Greek, calls the Sergas of Esplandian. It is one romance growing out of another as clumsily as a young oyster upon the back of its parent. The episode of the Queen of Dacia has been introduced for the same purpose. This has been here retained, that if any person should hereafter continue these volumes upon the plan of the *Bibliothèque des Romans*, everything necessary to render the after stories intelligible may be found in this, though this is in itself compleat. The patchwork of Montalvo's imagination is in many places distinguishable : the letters upon Esplandian's breast, the most foolish fiction in the book, are his invention, for the interpretation is in the Sergas. Probably he has lengthened the period between the quarrel of Amadis and the king, and their reconciliation. Oriana has no spell to preserve her charms, when she wins the prize of beauty, and yet her son is at the age of manhood ; it was convenient for the continuation of the history, that Esplandian should be of age to follow arms when his father retired. If the faults inserted by the Spaniard, with reference to his own supplement, were weeded out, the skilful structure of the original story would not be less admirable, than the variety and beauty of its incidents.

The Orlando Innamorato is the only story that has ever been successfully continued. Boyardo had written but a fragment, and a fragment it was

left by Berni. Montalvo had no such plea for adding his supplement to *Amadis* ; the design was compleat, and whatever he added to the finished structure could only mar its proportions. It is dangerous to attempt subjects which have been ennobled by a great master. Even the Greek Tragedians were not equal to the task of dramatizing the characters of Homer : they could not bend the bow of Mæonides. They teach us to despise Ajax, and to dislike Ulysses ; for they attribute nothing but cunning to the one, and only brutal courage to the other. They caught the outline, but the finer shades, and discriminating lines escaped them. In our own literature we have an illustrious instance ; who can tolerate the tale of *Paradise Lost* in the rhymes of Dryden's play ? It is fortunate for the fame of even Milton, that he did not execute his design of writing a second *Macbeth*.

3

WHEN the Curate purged Don Quixote's library with fire, he spared three romances ; *Tirante the White*, for its quaintness ; *Palmeirim of England*, partly for its merit, and partly because by some unaccountable blunder, he fancied that it was written by a King of Portugal ; *Amadis of Gaul*, because it was the first of the kind, and the best.

The censure of Cervantes was more efficient than his praise. *Lobeira*, like *Ariosto*, would

have received no injury from his ridicule, if like Ariosto he had stood alone. But the old judgement was reversed, the proscription acted like the laws of treason in the East, and the father suffered for the faults of his worthless children. Montalvo and his imitators sheltered themselves under a great name ; the Sergas of Esplandian is called the fifth book of Amadis of Gaul, the histories of Esplandian's son, and his son's son, were the sixth, seventh, and eighth ; and thus they went on from generation to generation. *Fortes creantur Fortibus* might be their standing motto. Instead of concluding, Chronicle-like, with " he died, and his son reigned in his stead," they keep Amadis alive like a Patriarch, or an Adept ; the father of a flock sees not so many generations sprung from him ; to such longevity do they prolong his life, that instead of fixing his birth not many years after the Crucifixion, it should have been dated some time before the Flood.

This perpetual succession of heroes was ill imagined. The son was always to exceed the father, and in his turn yield to the grandson ; as our hosiers, besides the best stockings, sell the extra best, and the best superfine. Esplandian must fight with Amadis, and Lisuarte of Greece with Esplandian, and Amadis of Greece with Lisuarte. Hence also the ridiculous hyperboles ; when all the varieties of fighting had been exhausted by Amadis, it only remained to make taller giants for Esplandian, and give a stronger

scythe-sweep to his sword to mow them down. The fictions of Lobeira are more modest. Famon-gomadan and his family are but giants of the O'Bryan breed, with names, to the great merit of their god-fathers, of a most giantly proportion. If the author of Amadis be compared in his battles with Ariosto, his descriptions will be found as lively and as varied, he brings every thing before the eye with the same poet's power, but he rarely or never so wantonly abuses his prerogative.

In one respect the after romances copy the original with undeviating servility; they all have their Amadis and their Galaor, the constant and the general lover. There is at least some morality in the preference, but all the first-born are illegitimate. The hero must be every way irresistible. The loves of King Perion and of his son are justified or palliated by a pledged promise, which the Catholic Church considers binding. Lobeira expressly says they were not without fault, because the promise had been so secret. Montalvo's morals are more casuistical and convenient. It is glory enough for me, says Urganda, when she gives the bastard sons of Galaor and King Cildadan as comrades to Esplandian, it is glory enough for me, since I can have no children myself, that these, by my means, have been born of others; for they shall do such things for the service of God, that not only will they be forgiven who begot them against the command of the holy church

and I who was the cause, but it will be imputed to them as so great a merit, that they shall thereby obtain rest for their bodies in this world, and for their souls in the next. B. 4. ff. 270.

Montalvo and his followers have totally changed the machinery. The Urganda who appears to Galvanes and the Child of the Sea, is a true fairy, like Morgaine le Fay and the Lady of the Lake. Arcalaus is but a poor enchanter; he has only a room in his castle protected by a spell; his courage is more formidable than his black art, it is the fleetness of his horse that preserves him, not his magic. But the Urganda who sails about in the great serpent is an enchantress of a different species, and her rivals Zirfea and Melia are as tremendous as the Medea of classical romance.

The difference of religious temper is remarkable. Vasco Lobeira, who had never borne arms against any but the Castilians, made his hero fight with Christian enemies, and only now and then kill a stray Pagan. In Montalvo's days the reign of persecution had begun; the expulsion or extirpation of the Moors was a favourite hope of the Spaniards after they had subdued them, and the heroes of Spanish romance naturally became the champions of the faith. It is no wonder that the original work differs so materially from the swarm of imitations! Tressan need not have supposed that they must have been written in a different country to account for its superiority. Lobeira could paint heroes from the life. The fame

of the Black Prince and the odour of his virtues were still fresh in Spain. It was the age of chivalry, the noon-day of heroism and honour. A Portuguese, one of the good and loyal Portuguese as their own excellent chronicler calls them, who fought at Aljubarrota, for King Joam of good memory, might conceive the character of Amadis. Nuno Alvares Pereira might be his living pattern. But a Spaniard who described humane and generous valour in the days of Ferdinand and the Austrian family, could paint only from a dim recollection of the past. A century the most eventful of any in human history had changed every thing, the mode of warfare, the politics, the religious feelings of Europe were all altered. The Inquisition and the house of Austria, two curses more fatal than all the plagues of Egypt, were established in Spain, and her civil and religious liberties were destroyed.

Inferior as these after-books of Amadis certainly are, they form so singular an epoch in the history of literature that an abridgement of the whole series into our language is to be desired. Should this be attempted, it must be from the Spanish, not from the *Bibliothèque des Romans*, nor from the versions of D'Herberay. D'Herberay has omitted much that is curious in manners, and inserted much that is abominable in morals; he is inaccurate and obscene. There is occasionally, though but rarely, a rude and savage nakedness in the original which I have veiled. The French-

man has always delighted to expose it; he has dilated single phrases into whole paragraphs, with that love of lewdness which is so peculiarly and characteristically the disgrace of French literature.

What is become of these books which were once so numerous? in their own country they are as rare as they are in this. Almost one might suppose that the curate and the barber had extended their inquisitorial scrutiny to the booksellers' shops, and committed editions instead of volumes to the flames.

4

It is the hypothesis of Warton, that romance was introduced by the Moors into Spain, and from thence diffused over Europe. Writers of equal eminence have controverted this opinion, and advanced others equally hypothetical. Romance, or fictitious narrative, is, in fact, like poetry, common to all countries, and its character is in like manner every where modified by the circumstances of society.

The machinery of the early romance writers is probably rather of classical than of oriental origin. Classical superstitions lingered long after the triumph of Christianity. The Spanish chronicles continually speak of augury. Certain practices of heathen faith were prohibited in Portugal, by

a law enacted during the life of Vasco Lobeira. The Fathers of the Church expressly assert that the gods of the gentiles are the fallen angels; and with this key, a Catholic may believe the whole of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*. St. Anthony the Great saw and conversed with a centaur, and St. Jerome vouches for his veracity.

Enchanted weapons may be traced to the workshop of Vulcan as easily as to the dwarfs of Scandinavia. The tales of dragons may be originally oriental; but the adventures of Jason and Hercules were popular tales in Europe, long before the supposed migration of Odin, or the birth of Mohammed. If magical rings were invented in Asia, it was Herodotus who introduced the fashion into Europe. The fairies and ladies of the lake bear a closer resemblance to the nymphs and naiads of Rome and Greece, than to the peris of the East.

THE reputation of the books of chivalry was declining, when Cervantes destroyed it. George of Montemayor had newly introduced the pastoral romance; his *Diana* is so dull and worthless a story, that it is wonderful it should ever have been successful enough to provoke imitation. Tales of intrigue were becoming fashionable. Of these Juan de Timoneda, a Valencian, is said to

have been the first writer in Spain. His first work *El Patranuelo* bears date 1576. These *novelas* were symptomatic of worse morals than the books of chivalry. The comic romance, of which the heroes are uniformly rogues, was still more mischievous. *Lazarillo de Tormes* was the first of this class : of the swarm which followed, *Guzman de Alfarache*, and *La Picara Justina* are the best known. The common ballads of the country were infected, and ruffians and sharpers are still the heroes of the popular songs of Spain. The French romances do not appear to have been naturalised either in Spain or Portugal. Of late indeed we are told by Fischer that two editions of *Cassandra* have sold in the space of a year and a half at Madrid. It is singular that *Calprenade* should have found no readers in Spain, till he was no longer read in any other part of Europe.

The books of chivalry have become scarce, in consequence of their popularity. They have probably been fairly worn out by repeated perusal ; but as their fashion was gone by, it was useless to reprint them for general sale. Some few are still published for children, and it is no little proof of their merit that they are their favourite books. In England we have *Valentine and Orson*, and the *Seven Champions of Christendom*. *Parismus* and *Parismenos*, which is among the boys' books mentioned by *Uncle Toby* and in the very interesting *Memoirs of Mr. Gifford*, has lost its ground. In Portugal, *Turpin's History of Char-*

lemain and the Twelve Peers is the popular work; the parent of the whole stock, is the last survivor.

6

It remains that I should state in what manner the present version has been executed.

To have translated a closely printed folio would have been absurd. I have reduced it to about half its length, by abridging the words, not the story; by curtailing the dialogue, avoiding all recapitulations of the past action, consolidating many of those single blows which have no reference to armorial anatomy, and passing over the occasional moralizings of the author. There is no vanity in saying, that this has improved the book, for what long work may not be improved by compression? meagre wine may be distilled into alcohol. The minutest traits of manners have been preserved, and not an incident of the narrative omitted. I have merely reduced the picture, every part is preserved, and in the same proportions. Amadis of Gaul is valuable, not only for its intrinsic merit, as a fiction, but as a faithful representation of manners and morality; and as such, these volumes may be referred to, as confidently as the original. The edition which I have made use of is that of Seville,* 1547. The copy, for

* M. le C. Gordon de Perce! in his *Bibliothèque des Romans*, says the oldest edition of Amadis is that of Seville,

the book itself is exceedingly rare, was from the library of Mr. Heber, a gentleman whose liberality in the disposal of a very valuable collection, leaves his friends less reason to regret that the public libraries of England should be more difficult of access, and consequently less useful, than those of any other country in Europe.

The Comte de Tressan in his free translation, has compleatly modernized and naturalized the character of the romance: his book is what he designed to make it, an elegant work; but the manners and feelings of the days of chivalry are not to be found there; they are all hidden under a varnish of French sentiment. He has scoured the old shield; the glitter which it has gained does not compensate for the loss of its sharpness, nor for the lines that are effaced.

1526. His work is exceedingly inaccurate. He has not mentioned that of 1547. I should conjecture, that there must have been an edition printed at Medina del Campo.

The story of Amadis was certainly popular before the date he has assigned for its first publication. When the Spaniards first saw Mexico, they said to each other it was like the places of enchantment which were spoken of in the book of Amadis. This was in 1549. There is another passage in the excellent history of Bernal Diaz which seems to imply that they knew the original Amadis, not the work of Montalvo; he says they compared a boastful man who did nothing in battle to Agrajes. *Llamavamosle que era otro Agrajes sin obras*. It should seem that the character of Agrajes had been modified by Montalvo. Yet, could a manuscript story have been so commonly known as to be the talk of the soldiery?

I should have abridged from the English translation had it been accurate, that the character of the language might have assimilated better with the work. But the English version, which bears date as late as 1618, a century after the publication of the book in Spain, has been made from the French; every trait of manners which were foreign to D'Herberay, or obsolete in his time, is accordingly omitted, and all the foolish anachronisms and abominable obscenities of the Frenchman are retained. I kept my eye upon it as I proceeded, for the purpose of preserving its language where it was possible. A modern style would have altered the character of the book; as far as was in my power I have avoided that fault, not by intermixing obsolete words, but by rendering the original structure of sentence as literally as was convenient, and by rejecting modern phraseology and forms of period. It cannot be supposed that I have uniformly succeeded in this attempt: the old wine must taste of the new cask.

The names which have a meaning in the original have not been translated. I have used *Beltenebros* instead of the Beautiful Darkling, or the Fair Forlorn; *Florestan* instead of Forester; *El Patin* instead of the Emperor Gosling; as we speak of *Barbarossa*, not Red-Beard; *Bocanegra*, not Black Muzzle; *St. Peter*, not Stone the Apostle.

The praise of accuracy is all to which I lay claim for the present work; and that I claim con-

fidently. Perhaps others may not see the beauties which I perceive ; the necessity of dwelling upon every sentence has produced in me a love for the whole. The reader will pass rapidly where I have lingered and loitered ; he who drives post through a country sees not the same beauties as the foot-traveller. But the merit of the work itself is not now to be ascertained, the verdict of ages has decided that. Amadis of Gaul is among prose, what Orlando Furioso is among metrical romances, not the oldest of its kind, but the best.





CONTENTS.

Book the First.

CHAPTER I.

The Introduction and Beginning of this History	Page 1
------------------------------------------------------	-----------

CHAPTER II.

How Amadis was begotten and born	6
----------------------------------------	---

CHAPTER III.

How King Perion went to his own country, and of what befell him. And how Urganda met Don Gandales and of that which she said to him	12
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER IV.

How King Languines took with him Amadis, who was called the Child of the Sea, and Gandalin the son of Don Gandales.	21
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER V.

How King Lisuarte sailing towards Great Britain took port in the kingdom of Scotland, and how the Child of the Sea was made Knight by King Perion, without their knowing each other.	26
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER VI.

How Urganda gave the lance to the Child of the Sea, and how he delivered King Perion from those who would have slain him	35
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER VII.

	Pa
Of the battle which the Child of the Sea had with Galpano and his people.....	40

CHAPTER VIII.

How the three Knights came to the court of King Languines, and the other Knight in the litter, and his traitorous Wife, by command of Amadis	43
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER IX.

How King Lisuarte sent to the house of King Languines for his daughter Oriana, and he sent her, and with her his daughter Mabilia; and how the Child of the Sea and Agraves went to succour King Perion of Gaul	46
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER X.

Of the battle which the Child of the Sea had with King Abies, and how he conquered him, whereby the war between King Abies and King Perion was concluded	55
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER XI.

How King Perion and Queen Elisena knew the Child of the Sea to be their son Amadis	60
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER XII.

How Don Galaor was made a knight by Amadis of Gaul his brother	65
----------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER XIII.

How Don Galaor fought the Giant of the Rock of Galtares and conquered him	75
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER XIV.

How Amadis came to the castle of Darden the Proud, and of the words which he had with him, and of the battle which he had with him in the court of King Lisuarte	83
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CONTENTS.

xxix.

CHAPTER XV.

	Page
Of the funeral which King Lisuarte gave Dardan and his Mistress, and what Amadis did meanwhile	91

CHAPTER XVI.

How Amadis made himself known to King Lisuarte, and the other knights of his court	95
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER XVII.

Of the things which happened to Agraves after the war of Gaul	101
---------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XVIII.

Of the news which Amadis had of Don Galaor his brother, and how he departed from the court of King Lisuarte to go in quest of him	108
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XIX.

How Amadis fought with Angriote of Estravaus and his brother, and conquered them	114
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XX.

Of the battle which Amadis had with Arcalaus the Enchanter, and how he escaped from his enchantment.	122
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXI.

How Arcalaus carried tidings to the court of King Lisuarte that Amadis was slain, and of the lamentations that were made for him	127
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXII.

Of the trick which a Knight put upon Don Galaor and how he revenged himself; and of what happened to Amadis in the Castle where was the fair child Briolania	131
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXIII.

Of the cruel and hard battle between Amadis and Don Galaor, and how they knew each other	141
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXIV.

	Page
How Agraves and Don Galvanes and Olivas arrived at the court of King Lisuarte.....	143

CHAPTER XXV.

How Amadis and Galaor and Balays of Carsante determined to go to King Lisuarte, and of the great adventures which befell them on the road	146
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXVI.

How Don Galaor completed his adventure	150
----------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXVII.

How Amadis delivered the damsel from the knight who mistreated her, and how afterwards when he was sleeping another knight carried her away	153
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXVIII.

How Amadis fought with the knight who had stolen away the damsel, and conquered him	157
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXIX.

How Balays atchieved his adventure	160
------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXX.

How King Lisuarte held a Cortes and of what happened there.....	163
-----------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXXI.

How Amadis and Don Galaor and Balays of Carsante arrived at the palace of King Lisuarte, and Galaor remained as the king's knight	166
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXXII.

How King Lisuarte ordained his Cortes to be held in London.....	169
-----------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXXIII.

How when the Cortes was assembled King Lisuarte asked counsel of his knights concerning what he ought to do	174
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CONTENTS.

xxxi

CHAPTER XXXIV.

	Page
How King Lisuarte being in great pleasure a damsel covered with mourning humbled herself before him to beg a boon, the which was by him granted.....	177

CHAPTER XXXV.

In which is shown the ruin of King Lisuarte, and all that befell him in consequence of the rash promises which he had made.....	186
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXXVI.

How Amadis and Galaor knew of this great treason and took counsel to procure, if they could, the liberty of the King and Oriana	192
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXXVII.

How Don Galaor delivered King Lisuarte from the captivity to which they were treacherously leading him away	198
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

How tidings came to the queen that King Lisuarte was made prisoner, and how Barsinan executed his treason, and how at last he was overthrown and the king restored to his kingdom	203
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXXIX.

How Amadis came to succour the City of London, and what he did there	206
----------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XL.

How King Lisuarte held a Cortes which lasted twelve days, at which great feastings were made, and of the many chiefs and knights who came there	211
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XLI.

Of the battle which Amadis had promised the fair child Briolania to perform against Abiseos and his two sons in revenge of her father's death	215
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XLII.

	Page
How Don Galaor went with the damsel in quest of the knight who had overthrown them, till he did battle with him	220

CHAPTER XLIII.

Showing how Don Florestan was the son of King Perion by a fair damsel, daughter to the Count of Salandia.	229
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XLIV.

How Don Galaor and Florestan, going towards the kingdom of Sobradisa, met three Damsels at the Fountain of the Elm Trees	241
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Book the Second.

CHAPTER I.

Here beginneth the Second Book of Amadis of Gaul; and because the great things which will be related in the Fourth Book concerning Amadis are all relating to the Firm Island, it behoves that in this second it should be related what this island was, and who left those enchantments and the great riches which were therein	250
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER II.

How Amadis with his brethren and his cousin Agrayes went towards King Lisuarte, and how by adventure they went to the enchanted Firm Island, and of what befel them there	254
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER III.

How Durin went with the letter of Oriana to Amadis, and how when Amadis had seen the letter he abandoned everything in despair, and went to hide himself in the forest	264
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CONTENTS.

xxxiii

CHAPTER IV.

	Page
How Gandalin and Durin followed the track of Amadis, carrying his arms which he had left, and how they found him, and how he did battle with a knight and conquered him.....	269

CHAPTER V.

Showing who the knight was whom Amadis conquered, and what had befallen him before he was conquered.	273
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VI.

How Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrayes went in quest of Amadis, and how Amadis forsaking his arms and changing his name betook himself to a solitary life with a good man in a hermitage.....	277
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VII.

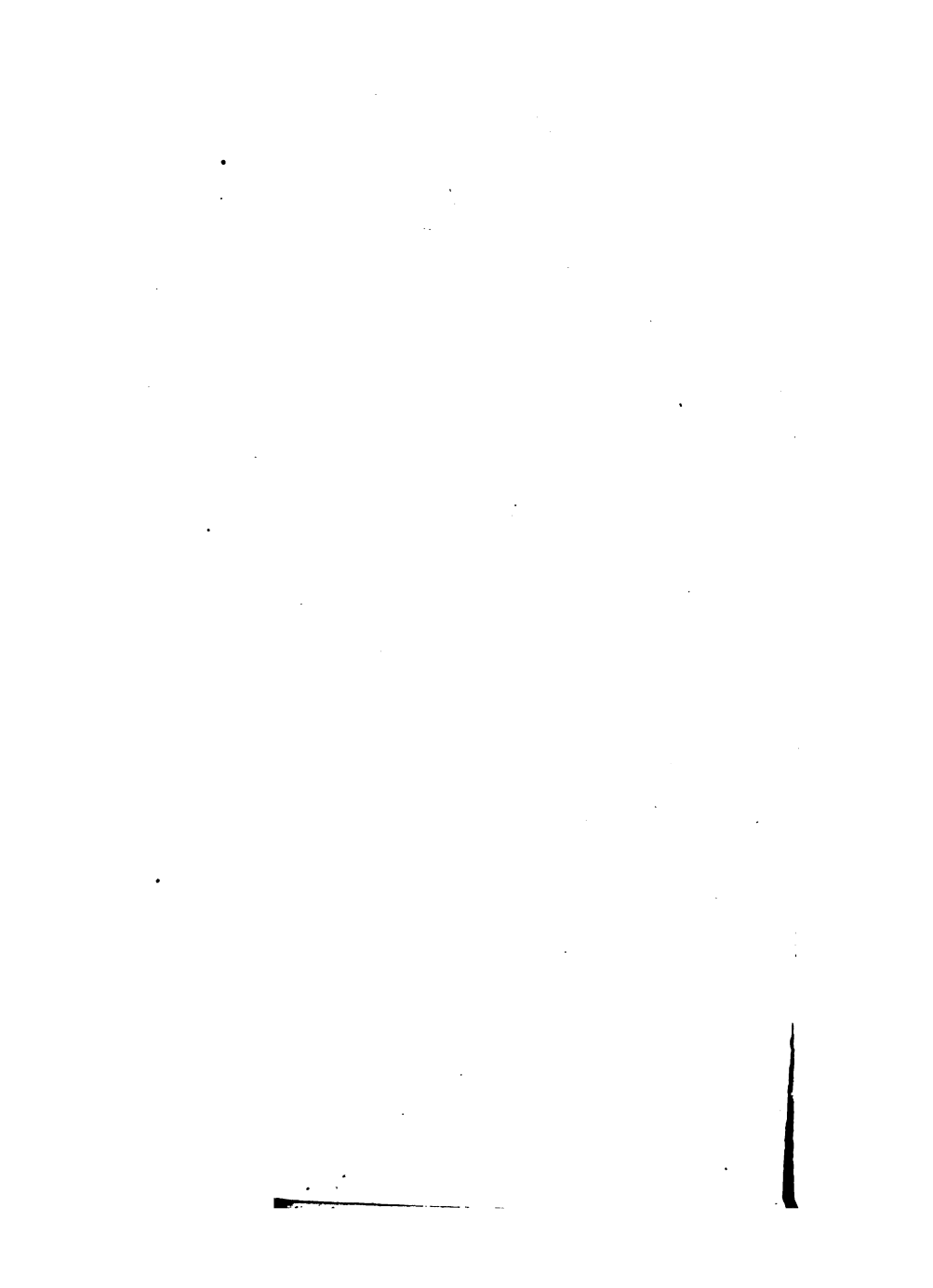
How Durin returned to his lady after having delivered her bidding to Amadis, and of the grief she made for the news	287
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

How Guilan the Pensive took the shield and armour of Amadis, which he found by the fountain, and carried them to the court of King Lisuarte	291
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER IX.

Relating how, Beltenebros being upon a Poor Rock, Corisanda came there in a ship in search of her lover Florestan, and of what happened, and what she said in the Court of King Lisuarte	296
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----





AMADIS OF GAUL.

Book the First.

CHAP. I.—The Introduction and Beginning of this History.

NOT many years after the passion of our Redeemer, there was a Christian king in the lesser Britain, by name Garinter, who, being in the law of truth, was of much devotion and good ways. This king had two daughters by a noble lady his wife. The eldest was married to Languines King of Scotland; she was called the Lady of the Garland, because her husband taking great pleasure to behold her beautiful tresses, would have them covered only with a chaplet of flowers. Agraves and Mabilia were their children, a knight and damsel of whom in this history much mention is made. Elisena the other daughter was far more beautiful, and although she had been demanded in marriage by many great princes, yet she would wed with none, but for her solitary and holy life was commonly called the Lost Devotee,* because it was considered that for one of such rank, gifted with such beauty and sought in marriage by so many chiefs, this way of life was not fitting.

* *La Beata perdida.* *Methodist, Puritan, or the Elect*, would perhaps express the meaning of *Beata*, which is in common use, if they were not sectarian words.

King Garinter, who was somewhat stricken in years, took delight in hunting. It happened one day, that having gone from his town of Alima to the chace, and being separated from his people, as he went along the forest saying his prayers, he saw to the left a brave battle of one knight against two. Soon had he knowledge of the twain, in that they were his own vassals, who being proud men and of powerful lineage had often by their evil customs offended him. Who the third was he knew not, but not relying so much in the worth of the one, as he feared the two, he drew aside and waited the event, which sorted to such effect, as by the hand of that one the others were both slain. This done the stranger came towards the king, and seeing him alone, said, Gentle sir, what country is this wherein knights errant are thus assailed? The king replied, Marvel not at this, knight, for our country yields as others do, both good and bad: as for these men, they have often offended, even against their lord and king, who could do no justice upon them, because of their kindred, and also because they harboured in this covered mountain. This king you speak of, replied the stranger, I come to seek him from a far land, and bring him tidings from a dear friend. If you know where he may be found, I pray you tell me. The king answered, Befal what may, I shall not fail to speak what is true. I am the king. The knight then loosing his shield and helmet gave them to his squire, and went to embrace Garinter, saying that he was King Perion of Gaul who had long desired to know him. Greatly were these kings contented that their meeting was in such a manner, and conferring together they took their way through the wood towards the city, when suddenly a hart ran before them

which had escaped the toils. They followed at full speed, thinking to kill it, but a lion springing from a thicket before them, seized the hart, and having torn it open with his mighty claws, stood fiercely looking at the kings. Fierce as you are, said King Perion, you shall leave us part of the game ! and he took his arms and alighted from his horse, who being affrighted at the wild beast would not go near him, and placing his shield before him went towards the lion sword in hand. The lion left his prey and came against him, they closed, and Perion at the moment when he was under the beast and in most danger, thrust his sword into his belly. When Garinter saw him fall, he said within himself not without cause is that knight famed to be the best in the world. Meanwhile their train came up, and then was their prey and venison laid on two horses and carried to the city.

The queen being advised of her guest they found the palace richly adorned, and the tables covered. At the highest the kings seated themselves : at the other sate the queen with Elisena her daughter, and there were they served, as in the house of such a man be-seemed. Then being in that solace, as that princess was so beautiful and King Perion on his part equal, in that hour and point they so regarded each other, that her great modesty and holy life could not now avail, but that she was taken with great and incurable love ; and the king in like manner, though till then his heart had been free, so that during the meal both the one and the other appeared absent in thought. When the tables were removed, the queen would depart to her chamber ; Elisena rising dropt a ring from her lap, which she had taken off when she washed her hands, and in her confusion of mind for-

gotten. She stooped for it and Perion who was near her stooped down also, so that their hands met, and he taking her hand prest it. She coloured deeply and thanked the king for his service. Ah, lady, said he, it shall not be the last, for all my life shall be spent in your service.

She followed her mother, but so disturbed that her sight was dizzy, and now not able to endure her feelings, she went and discovered them to the damsel Darioleta in whom she confided, and with tears from her eyes and from her heart, besought her to find out if King Perion loved any other woman. Darioleta surprized at this alteration, pitied and comforted her mistress, and went to King Perion's chamber. She found his squire at the door with the King's garments, which he was about to give him; Friend, said she, go you about your other affairs, for I must wait upon your master. The squire, thinking it was the custom of the country, gave her the garments and went away. She then entered the chamber where the king was in bed. He, who had seen her converse with Elisena confidently, now hoped that she might bring some remedy to his passion, and said to her all in trembling, Fair friend, what demand ye? I bring you wherewith to cloathe yourself, she replied. That should be for my heart, said Perion, which is now stript and naked of all my joy. As how? said the damsel. Thus, quoth he, coming into this land with entire liberty, and apprehending nothing but the chance of arms, here in this house I have been wounded by a mortal wound, for which if you, fair damsel, can procure me remedy, you shall be well recompensed. He then charged her not to discover him but where it was requisite, and told her his love


for Elisena. Then said Darioleta, My lord, promise me on the faith of a king and a knight, that you will take to wife my Lady Elisena, when time shall serve, and right soon will I bring ye, where not only your heart shall be satisfied, but hers also, who, it may be, is in as much or more thought and dolour than you, with the same wound. But without this promise you shall never win her. The king whose will was already disposed by God that that which ensued might come to pass, took his sword which was by him, and laying his right hand upon the cross of its hilt, pronounced these words : I swear by this cross, and this sword wherewith I received the order of knighthood, to perform whatever you shall require for the Lady Elisena. Be you then of good cheer, said she, for I also will effect my promise.

Darioleta returned to the Princess and told her how she had sped ; you know, said she, that in the chamber where King Perion lodgeth there is a door opening to the garden, whence your father-used to go out, and which at this present is covered with the hangings ; but I have the key thereof, and we can go in at night, when all in the palace are at rest. When Elisena heard this she was highly contented, but recollecting herself, she replied, How shall this be brought to pass, seeing that my father will lodge in the chamber with King Perion ? Leave that to me said the damsel, and with that they parted.

When it was night Darioleta drew aside the squire of Perion, and asked him if he was of gentle birth. Aye, said he, the son of a knight ! but why ask ye ? For the desire I have, quoth she, to know one thing, which I beseech you by the faith you owe to God and to the king your master, not to hide from me. Who

is the lady whom your master loveth best? My master, replied the squire, loves all in general, and none as you mean. While they thus talked Garinter came nigh, who seeing Darioleta in conference with Perion's squire, called her and asked what he had to say to her. In sooth my lord, quoth she, he tells me that his master is wont to be alone, and certainly I think he will feel himself embarrassed by your company. Garinter hearing that went to King Perion and said, my lord, I have many affairs to settle, and must rise at the hour of matins, and that you may not be disturbed, you had better be alone in your chamber. King Perion replied, do as shall seem best to your liking. Then Garinter understood that Darioleta had told him rightly of his guest's inclination, and ordered his bed to be removed from Perion's apartment. These tidings Darioleta carried to her mistress, and they waited the hour when all should retire to sleep.

CHAP. II.—How Amadis was begotten and born.

T night when all was husht, Darioleta rose, and threw a mantle over her mistress, and they went into the garden. When Elisena came to the chamber door her whole body trembled, and her voice that she could not speak. King Perion had fallen asleep, he dreamt that some one, he knew not who, entered his chamber by a secret door, who thrusting a hand between his ribs, took out his heart and threw it into the river. He asked why that cruelty was committed, and was answered—It is nothing! there is another heart left there which I must take from you, though

against my will. Then the king suddenly awoke in great fear, and blessed himself. At this moment the two damsels had opened the door, and were entering ; he heard them, and being full of his dream suspected treason, when he saw a door open behind the hangings, of which he had not known, and leaping from the bed he caught up his sword and shield. What is this? cried Darioleta. The king then knew her, and saw Elisena his beloved ; he dropt his shield and sword, and throwing a mantle about him which was ready by the bed, he went and embraced her whom he loved. Darioleta then took up the sword in token of his promise and oath, and went into the garden, and Perion remained alone with Elisena,* in whom as he beheld her by the light of the three torches, he thought all the beauty of the world was centered.

When it was time that they should part, Darioleta returned to the chamber. I know, lady, said she, that heretofore you have been better pleased with me than you are now ; but we must go, for time calleth

* Here says the Spanish author, we should learn, that when women turn aside their thoughts from worldly things, despising the great beauty with which nature has endowed them, the fresh youth which so much increases it, and the delights and pleasures which with the riches of their parents they might hope to enjoy, and chuse for the salvation of their souls to place themselves as recluses in poor habitations, and offer up with all obedience their own free will to be subject to others, and pass their time without any of the pleasures or glories of the world, though their sisters and kindred are enjoying them ; they ought with great earnestness to stop their ears, and close their eyes, and refuse to see friend or relation, but retiring altogether to devout contemplation and holy prayer, think them the true delights, as indeed they are ; lest by seeing and hearing, their religious purposes be overcome, and it should be with them as it was with the Princess Elisena.

us. Elisena rose. I beseech you, said Perion, do not forget the place ! and she departed with the damsel. He remained in his room, and recollecting his dream, which still affrighted him, a wish to know its signification made him desirous to return to his own country, where were many wise men skilful in the solution of such things.

Ten days King Perion sojourned at Alima, and every night his beloved mistress visited him. Then it was necessary that he should depart, despite of his own inclination, and the tears of Elisena. He took leave of Garinter and the queen, and having armed himself, when he looked for his sword to gird it on, he missed it ; though the loss grieved him, for it was a tried and goodly weapon, he durst not enquire for it, but, making his squire procure him another, he departed straight for his own kingdom. Albeit, before his departure, Darioleta came and told him of the great affliction and loneliness in which his lady was left. I commend her to you my friend, said he, as mine own proper heart ; then taking from his finger a ring of two which he wore, each resembling the other, he bade her carry it to his love.

So Elisena remained, leading a solitary life, and in great grief. Darioleta comforted her the best she could, and the time past on, till she felt herself great with child, and lost the appetite for food and the pleasure of sleep, and the fresh colour of her countenance. Then was her sorrow and carefulness greater, and not without cause, for in that time was there a law, that any woman, of what quality or estate soever, offending in such sort, could not excuse herself from death. This so cruel and abominable a custom endured, till the coming of the good King Arthur, who was the

best king that ever there reigned, and he revoked it at the time when he slew Floyon in battle, before the gates of Paris. And albeit because of the words which Perion swore upon his sword, she was without fault before God, yet was she not before the world, for they had been so secret. To let him know her condition, was what she could not think, for he was young and proud of heart, and took no delight elsewhere than where renown was to be gained, and so was for ever going an errant knight from one place to another. So she found no remedy for her life; yet did not the loss of life afflict her so much as that of her dear and beloved lord. But God, by whose permission all this had come to pass for his holy service, gave such discretion to Darioleta, that she remedied all.

In the palace of King Garinter there was an arched chamber separated from the rest, which overlooked the river; it had a little iron door through which the damsels sometime were wont to go out by the water side, but now none inhabited the apartment. This chamber, by Darioleta's advice, did Elisena request of her father, as suiting her disposition and solitary life, where she might perform her prayers undisturbed, with no companion but Darioleta, who had always served and accompanied her. This request she lightly obtained, and hereupon was the key of the iron door given to Darioleta, to open when it pleased the princess to recreate herself by the river. Here was Elisena somewhat comforted, to find herself in a place so convenient for her purpose, and she required council of her damsel what should be done with the fruit that she travailed withal? What? replied Darioleta, must suffer to save you. Holy Mary, then said Elisena, shall I consent to destroy the child of him whom

love best in the world? Leave alone those thoughts, the damsel answered, if they kill you they will not spare the infant: it were great folly to destroy yourself and your lover, who could not live after you, for the sake of saving the child, who, if you die, must die also.

As this damsel was of quick mind herself, and now guided by the grace of God, she determined to have the remedy ready before the need; and it was in this guise: she took four boards and with them made an ark large enough to contain a new born child and its garments, and long enough for the sword, she fastened them together with bitumen, in such sort as the water should have no place to enter. She hid all this under her bed till she had compleated it; and it was even and close as if a master had made it. Then she showed it to Elisena and asked for what she thought it was designed? She answered, I know not. You shall know, said the damsel, when need is. Elisena replied, but little do I care to know what is done or what is said, for I am near to lose all my joy and comfort. Then had Darioleta great grief, and she went apart, not bearing to see her mistress weep.

It was not long before her travail came, and in those new and strange pains, in bitterness of heart, and not daring to cry out or groan, it pleased the Lord that she was safely delivered of a son. The damsel took him in her arms, and saw that the boy was a fair boy had he not been borne to hard fortune, but she delayed not to execute what of necessity had been resolved. She wrapt him in rich garments, and laying him by his mother, brought the ark. Elisena cried, what will you do? Place him here, she answered, and launch him down the stream, and belike he may

escape. Then the mother took him in her arms, and wept bitterly over him. But Darioleta took ink and parchment, and wrote upon it, this is Amadis,* son of a king. It was the name of her saint, and of great reverence in that country. She covered the parchment with wax, and hung it by a string round the neck of the babe, and Elisena fastened upon the string the ring which King Perion had given her at his departure. Darioleta then placed the infant in the ark, and laid his father's sword beside him; this done, she covered the ark, which was securely joined and calked, and, opening the iron door, took it in her arms, and placed it in the river, commending it to God.

The tide ran strong, and soon carried the ark into the sea, which was not more than a half-league distant. Now the dawn appeared, and it pleased God that there was a knight of Scotland sailing on that sea, returning from the lesser Britain to his country, with his wife, who had newly been delivered of a son called Gandalin. The morning was both calm and clear, whereby the Knight Gandales saw the ark floating among the waves, and he ordered the mariners to put out a boat and take it up. They speedily overtook it, and Gandales opened the cover, and beholding the babe within, he cried, This is from no mean place! and this he said because of the rich garments, and the ring and the good sword, and he cursed the mother who had for fear abandoned so fair a child. He carefully laid aside all the things that were contained in the ark, and desired his wife to breed up the infant, and she ordered the nurse of her own child Gandalin to suckle him. So they went their way through the sea with a favour-

* *Este es Amadis sin tiempo, hijo de rey; y sin tiempo dezia ella porque creya que luego seria muerto.*

able time, and took port in a town in Scotland called Antalia, and from thence departing they came to his castle, which was one of the good ones of the land ; there he had the child brought up like his own son, and such he was believed to be, because the mariners who took up the ark, had sailed away to other parts.

CHAP. III.—How King Perion went to his own country, and of what befell him. And how Urganda met Don Gandales and of that which she said to him.

KING PERION having departed from Alima went his way in great heaviness, as well as for the loneliness wherein he had left Elisena whom in his heart he loved, as also for the dream which in such a season had come upon him. But having reached his own country, he sent for all his great lords, and ordered the bishops to bring with them the most learned clerks in their parts, to the end they might expound his dream. When his vassals knew of his return, many others, as well as all who were summoned, came with great desire to see him who was beloved of all. The king conferred with them on the state of the realm, but it was always with a sad countenance, whereby they were much afflicted ; and this business being dispatched, he dismissed them each to his own lands, only staying with him three clerks whom he knew were the most skilful in what he desired to learn. These men he took into his chapel, and there upon his sacred Host he made them swear to answer truly what he should demand, without fear, how dangerous soever it were. That done they left the chapel, and he told them his dream. Then one of them whose name was Ungan the Picard, the most expert of them, thus an-

swered, Dreams Sire, are vain things, and for such ought to be esteemed; notwithstanding seeing it is your pleasure that some account should be made of yours, give us time to consider thereon. Let it be so, said the king; take twelve days: and he ordered them to be separated, that they should neither see nor converse with each other. They to their uttermost travailed upon this matter, and when the time was elapsed they went to the king. He first took Alberto of Champagne apart, and said to him, you know what you have sworn,—now then speak to me. Sire, answered Alberto, then let the rest be called into your presence for before them will I tell you. Whereupon they were sent for, and being all met, Alberto began. It appears to me that the closed chamber, and he whom you saw enter by the secret door, signify this realm, which is close and well guarded, nevertheless some one shall enter to take it from you, and like as he thrust his hand into your side and rent forth your heart and threw it into the river, even so shall town or castle be taken from you, and put into his hand from whom you shall not easily recover them. And the other heart? quoth the king, which he said should remain with me, and yet he must take it away against his will. It seemeth by this, answered Alberto, that some other shall invade your country, as the first did, yet constrained more by another commanding him to do so, than by any will in himself, and upon this, sire, I know nothing more to say. The king then commanded Anteles to say what he had discovered. He agreed to all that the other had said, except in this quoth he, that my art shows me* it is already done, and by the person that most loveth ye: this makes me

* *Mis suertes me muestran.*

marvel, for nothing of your kingdom is yet lost, and if it were, it could not be by one who loves you so dearly. Hearing this the king smiled a little, for it seemed he had said something.* But Ugan the Picard, who knew much more than they, held down his head and laughed heartily, a thing which he had seldom done, being by nature a thoughtful and melancholy man. The king wondered at this, and said, now master tell us what you know. Sire, said he, peradventure I have seen into things which should be manifested to you alone, therefore let these depart. Then the doors were closed and they twain remained together.

Know, king, said he, that what I laughed at was a word of which you thought little, when he said it was already done, and by the person who best loveth ye. Now shall I reveal what you keep closely concealed and think that none knows. You love, where you have already accomplished your will, and she whom you love is marvellously fair; then told he all the fashions of her as if she were there before him. The chamber in which you saw yourself enclosed, you well know, and how she to ease your heart and her own, entered without your knowledge by the secret door; and the hand that opened your side, is your union, and the heart which was taken out sheweth that she hath by you a son or a daughter. Master, said the king, what meaneth then the casting thereof into the river? He replied, seek not to know that which is of no importance. Tell me howbeit, quoth Perion, and fear nothing. Since you are pleased to hear it, answered Ugan, I demand assurance that for any thing which I may reveal, you will never hereafter be wroth with her who loveth you so loyally; and Perion made the promise. Know

* Que no avia dicho nada.

then, said the master, that what you saw cast into the river, is the child which she has had by you. And that other heart that remained? what should that be? —You may interpret the one by the other, answered Ugan: you will have another son, who will in some manner be taken away against the will of her that caused the loss of the first. Strange things hast thou told me! said Perion, and may it please God that the latter part, the misfortunes of my children, prove not so true as what thou hast told me concerning the lady whom I love. The master answered, None can alter the things which were ordained by God, nor know where-in they shall end. Men therefore should neither repine nor rejoice thereat, for oftentimes as well the evil as the good proves far otherwise than it seemed. And do thou O king, lay aside from thy memory all this which thou wast so solicitous to know, and pray to God to dispose these things to his holy service. The king was satisfied in what he desired, and so pleased with the wisdom and the last words of Ugan the Picard, that he rewarded him well, and kept him thenceforward near his person.

As Perion parted from the clerks, he met a damsel* more ornamented than beautiful, who said to him, know King Perion, that when thou recoverest thy loss, the kingdom of Ireland shall lose its flower! and away she went, so that he could not detain her, and he remained thinking upon these things.

The author ceaseth to speak of this, and returneth to the child whom Gandales brought up. He was called the Child of the Sea, for so they had named him, and with much care was he brought up by that

* We have no word for the *Donzel* of the Spaniards, and *Damoisel* of the French.

good knight and his wife, and he grew and became so fair, that all who saw him marvelled. One day Gandales rode forth, for he was a right good knight and strong, and always accompanied King Languines at such time as they followed arms, and though the king had ceased to follow them, yet Gandales ceased not. He, as he rode along, met a damsel, that thus spake to him. Ah, Gandales if many great personages knew what I know, they would cut off thy head! Wherefore? quoth he. She replied, because thou nourishest their death. Now this was the damsel who had prophesied to King Perion. But Gandales understood not, and he said, Damsel, I beseech ye for God's sake, what is this? I shall not tell thee, she answered, but so it must be. And she went her way. He remained thoughtful, but soon he saw her returning upon her palfrey with all speed, and crying with a loud voice, Gandales help me—or I am dead! He looked and saw a knight come after her, sword in hand, and he spurred his horse between them, and cryed out, Sir Knight, God confound thee,* what wouldst thou with the damsel? What? said the other, wouldst thou protect her, who by her art has made me lose body and soul? Of that know I nothing, said Gandales, but protect her I will, for women are not to be thus punished, even though they deserve it. The knight answered, that we shall see, and returning his sword into the scabbard, he rode to a little thicket wherein there waited a damsel exceedingly fair, who gave him a shield and a lance, and then he ran at Gandales, and Gandales at him.

* A quien Dios de mala ventura. It is the Irish phrase, Bad luck to you!

They had not long fought before she who had desired succour of Gandales, stepped between them, and cried, Hold ! Forthwith the knight who had pursued her drew back, and she said to him—Come, make obeisance to me ! That shall I do willingly, said he, as to the thing in the world which I most love : and throwing the shield from his neck, and the sword from his hand, he bent his knees before her, to the wonder of Gandales ; then she bade him tell the damsel under the trees, to get her away immediately, or he would take her head off. He turned to her and exclaimed, Thou ill woman ! I know not why I spare thee. And the damsel saw that her friend was enchanted, wherefore she mounted her palfrey and rode away, making great sorrow.

The other damsel then said, Gandales I thank you for what you have done, go and good be with you ! as for this knight, I pardon him. That, said Gandales, you may ; but I shall not give over the battle, unless he confess himself vanquished. She answered, Give it over, for though you were the best knight in the world, I could make him vanquish you. Then tell me, said he, the meaning of what you said, that I nourished the death of many great personages. She made him swear that none should know it from him till she permitted, and then said, I tell thee, he whom thou findest in the sea shall be the flower of knighthood in his time ; he shall cause the strongest to stoop, he shall enterprize and finish with honour that wherein others have failed, and such deeds shall he do as none would think could be begun nor ended by body of man. He shall humble the proud, and cruel of heart shall he be against those who deserve it, and he shall be the knight in the world who most loyally maintains his

love, and he shall love one answerable to his high prowess. And I tell you that on both sides he is of kingly parentage. Now go thy way, and believe that all this shall come to pass, and if thou discoverest it, there shall happen to thee therefore more evil than good. Ah, lady ! said Gandales, tell me for God's sake where I can find you to talk with you upon this child's affairs ! She answered, that shalt thou never know. Tell me then your name I beseech you by the faith you owe to the thing in the world that you love best. Thou conjurest me so that I will tell : but the thing that I love best is that which least loves me, and it is that fair knight with whom you combated ; howbeit I cease not for that to bring him to my will, whatever he can do. My name is Urganda the Unknown, mark me well, and know me again if you can ! And he who first saw her a damsel in her spring time, as one of eighteen years, now beheld her so old and overspent, that he marvelled how she could sit upon her horse, and he crost himself. She took a perfume box from her bosom and touching it became as she was before. Now, said she, think you to find me hereafter though you should seek me ? weary not yourself for that, for though all living creatures go about it, if I list, they should lose their labour. As God shall save me, I believe it, lady ! but I pray you remember the child who is forsaken of all but myself. Doubt not that, said Urganda, I love him more than thou canst think, for I shall soon receive aid from him twice, which none else could give me, and he shall receive two guerdons to his joy. Now God be with thee ! thou shalt see me sooner than thou expectest. And then she took the shield and helmet of her friend to carry them, and Gandales, seeing *his head disarmed*, thought him the goodliest knight *that he had ever beheld*, and so they parted.

As Gandales returned to his castle he found that other damsel by the way, sitting beside a fountain and lamenting. She knew him and exclaimed, How is it knight that the wicked woman whom you helped has not destroyed you? Wicked she is not, said Gandales, but good and wise, and if you were a knight I would make you pay dearly for the folly of your words. Ah, the wretch, quoth she, how she knows to beguile every one! she has taken from me the fair knight who would more willingly be mine, but I will be revenged if I can. Gandales answered, It is a wild thought to hope to injure her who knows your very intentions, and as for the knight, it seems to me that you are both without reason or conscience. With that he left her and came to his castle, and seeing the little boy come running towards him, he took him up in his arms, and lovingly embraced him, and remembering all that Urganda had told him, he said in his heart, My fair child God let me live to see thy good days! and with that the tears came. At this time the child was of three years, and his beauty was marvellous to behold, and he, seeing the tears, put up his little hands to wipe them away, whereat Gandales rejoiced as a sign that he would be gentle-hearted, and thenceforward he taught him with a kinder will. And when he came to the age of five, he made a bow for him suited to his strength, and another for his son Gandalin, and they used to shoot before him.

When he was seven years old, King Languines and his queen and household, passing through his kingdom from one town to another, came to the castle of Gandales, where they were well feasted; but the Child of the Sea, and Gandalin and the other children were removed to the back court that they might not be

seen. It fortuned that the queen was lodged in one of the highest apartments of the castle, and looking from her window she saw the children at play with their bows, and among them remarked the Child of the Sea for his shapeliness and beauty, and he was better clad than his companions, of whom he looked like the lord. The queen called to her ladies and damsels, Come and see the fairest creature that ever was seen ! While they were looking at him, the child, who was thirsty, laid down his bow and arrows, and went to a water-pipe to drink. A boy bigger than the rest took up his bow to shoot with it ; this Gandalin would not suffer ; the other struck him angrily, and Gandalin cried out, Help me, Child of the Sea ! He hearing this ran to him, and snatched the bow and crying, In an ill minute did you strike my brother, struck him on the head with all his force. They fought awhile till the other was fain to run away, and meeting their tutor, who asked what was the matter, replied, that the Child of the Sea had beat him. The tutor went towards him with the strap in his hand ; How is this, Child of the Sea, said he, that you dare beat the boys ? I shall punish you ! But the child fell upon his knees ; I had rather you would strike me, said he, than that any one before me should dare to beat my brother ; and the tears came in his eyes. The tutor was moved, and told him to do so no more. All this the queen saw and she wondered why they called him the Child of the Sea.

CHAP. IV.—How King Languines took with him Amadis, who was called the Child of the Sea, and Gandalin the son of Don Gandaes.

AT this time the king and Gandaes entered, and the queen asked their host if that fair child was his? he answered, yes. Why, then, said she, is he called the Child of the Sea?—Because he was born on the sea, when I returned from Brittany. Truly* he is but little like you, said the queen; and this she said because the child was beautiful to a wonder, and Gandaes was more good than handsome. The king, who was looking at him likewise, bade Gandaes call him, for I will take him with me, said he, and have him brought up. So let it be, said Gandaes, but he is not yet of an age that he should leave his mother: then he went and brought him, and said, Child of the Sea, will you go with the king my master? Wherever you bid me, he replied, and my brother shall go with me. And I, quoth Gandalin, will not stay without him. Gandaes then looked at the king; I believe, sire, you must take them both. I am the better pleased, answered the king, and calling Agrayes, my son I would have you love these boys as well as I love their father.

When Gandaes saw that the Child of the Sea was placed in the hands of another, the tears came into his eyes, and he said within himself, Fair son, thou art a little one to begin to go into adventure and danger! and now I see thee in the service of those who may one day serve thee. God guard thee, and fulfil what the wise Urganda foretold, and let me live to see the great wonders which in arms are promised thee. When the king saw that his eyes were full, he said, I did not

* *Por Dios* is the original affirmation.

think thou hadst been so foolish. Nor am I, answered Gandales, but if it please you, do you and the queen hear me. The rest then withdrew, and he told them how he had found the child ; and he would have told what he knew from Urganda, but for his promise ; and now, said he, deal ye with the child as ye ought, for as God shall save me by the way in which he came to me, I believe he is of great lineage. Then the queen said, he should be her's so long as he was of an age to obey women ; and the next morning they departed, taking the children with them. Now I tell you that the queen brought up the Child of the Sea as carefully as if he had been her own son ; and the trouble she took with him was not in vain, for such was his talent and so noble his nature, that better and more quickly than any besides he learnt every thing. And he was so fond of the chace, that if they would have let him, he would have been always shooting with the bow, or training the dogs. And the queen loved him so that she would scarce suffer him to be out of her sight.

Now King Perion, after consulting the clerks, abode in his kingdom, and many times he thought upon the words which the damsel had spoken, yet could he not understand them. After some time, he being in his palace, there came a damsel and gave him a letter from Elisena his love, whereby she gave him to know that her father was dead, and she was unprotected, and for this cause he should pity her, for the queen of Scotland her sister was coming with her husband to take possession of the land. King Perion though he was sorrowful for Garinter's death, yet rejoiced to think that he should go for his mistress whom he never ceased to love ; and he said to the damsel, Return and tell your lady that without delaying a single day, I

shall speedily be with her ; and the damsel returned joyfully. The king then collecting a suitable retinue, set forth, and journied till he came to the lesser Britain, where he found news that Languines was in mastery of all the land, except those towns which her father had left to Elisena. So hearing that she was at a town called Arcarte he went there, and if he was well received need not be said, and she also by him who so dearly loved her. The king told her to call together all her friends and kindred, for he would take her to wife, the which Elisena did with great joy, for in that consisted the end of all her wishes. Now when King Languines knew the coming of King Perion, and how he would marry Elisena, he summoned all the noblemen of the land, and went with them to meet him, and when the marriage and the feasts were concluded, the kings agreed to return into their own dominions.

Perion returning with Elisena his wife, came to a river side where he would rest that night, and while the tents were erecting, he rode alone along the banks, thinking how he might learn something from Elisena about the child of whom Ungan the Picard had told him. So long went he on in this mood till he came to a hermitage, and fastening his horse to a tree, he went in to say his prayers. There was an old man within in the habit of his order, who asked him, Knight is it true that King Perion has married the daughter of our king ? yea verily, answered the king. Praised be God ! said the good hermit, for I know certainly that she loved him with all her heart.—How know you that ? By her own mouth, said he. The king then thinking to hear of him the thing he most desired to know, made himself known, and besought the hermit to tell him all he had heard from her. Truly, sir,

answered the good man, therein should I greatly fault, and you would hold me for a heretic if I should divulge what was said in confession : suffice what I tell you, that she loves you with true and loyal love. But I would have you know what a damsel, who seemed very wise, said to me at the time when you came first into this country, and I could not understand her : That from the Lesser Britain should come two dragons, who should hold their sway in Gaul, and their hearts in Great Britain ; and from hence they should go to devour the beasts of other countries, and against some they should be so fierce and furious, and against others so gracious and mild, as if they had neither talons nor hearts. The king wondered at this, which he could not understand, but there came a time when he knew the prophecy was true. So he returned to his tents.

When they were in bed together, he told the queen what had been interpreted of his dream, and asked her if she had brought forth a son. The queen hearing him, had so great shame that she wished herself dead ; and she altogether denied it, so that at this time the king could not learn what he desired. They continued their journey till they arrived in Gaul, and those of the land were well pleased with their queen, who was a most noble lady, and the king had by her a son and a daughter, whom he called Galaor and Melicia.

When the boy was two years and a half old, it so was, that the king his father sojourned at a town called Bangil, which was near the sea. The king was looking from a window towards the gardens, where the queen and her ladies were solacing themselves, and the child with them, who then began to walk. They saw enter through a postern-door, that went out to *the sea*, a giant, with a huge mace in his hand, so large

and mismade that never man saw him without affright. The women ran, some among the trees, and others fell down and shut their eyes that they might not see him. But he went straight to the child, who was left alone, and, taking him in his arms, he laughed, and said, The damsel told me true. And with that he went out by the same way, and, entering into a bark, put to sea. The queen, who saw him carry away the child, shrieked loudly, but it nothing availed, and her grief was so great, that though the king was greatly afflicted for the loss of his son, whom he could not succour, yet, seeing there was no remedy, he went to console Elisena, who was as it were, destroying herself with excess of grief, remembering the first son that she had exposed upon the sea, and now that she saw this gone also, she made the greatest raving in the world. But Perion took her with him to their chamber ; and, when she was somewhat calmed, he said to her, Now I know that what the wise men told me was true, for this was the last heart : so tell me all the truth, for, considering the state in which you were, you ought not to be blamed. And then the queen, though with great shame, related to him all ; and he comforted her, and bade her live in hope to hear good tidings of both their sons, whom it had pleased God to take away.

This giant, who carried away the child, was a native of Leonis, and he had two castles in an island, and his name was Gandalac. He was not so wicked as other giants, but of a gentle and good demeanour, except when he was enraged, and then would he do great cruelties. He sailed on till he came to the cape of an island, where there was a hermit : now the giant had peopled that island with Christians, and *ordered alms to be given him for his support.* Friend,

said he, take this child, whom you must bring up for me, and teach him all that is convenient for a knight, for he is the son of a king and queen ; and I forbid you ever to be his enemy. The good man asked him, why he had committed that great cruelty. That I will tell you, said he. I was about to embark to fight with Albadan, the fierce giant who slew my father, and has taken from me the rock Galtares, which is mine ; but there came a damsel to me, and said, this which you want to do must be accomplished by the son of King Perion of Gaul, who will have more strength and activity than thou hast. I asked her, if that was true. That shalt thou see, said she, when two branches of a tree shall be joined, which now are separated. In this manner Galaor was left with the hermit.

While these things aforesaid past, King Falangriz reigned in Great Britain, who dying without children, left a brother named Lisuarte, of great goodness in arms, and much discretion ; who had married Brisena, daughter of the King of Denmark, and she was the fairest lady that was to be found in all the islands of the sea. So, after the death of Falangriz, the chief men of his land sent for Lisuarte to be their king.

CHAP. V.—How King Lisuarte sailing towards Great Britain took port in the kingdom of Scotland, and how the Child of the Sea was made Knight by King Perion, without their knowing each other.



WHEN King Lisuarte heard this embassy he set sail with a great fleet, and on their way they put into Scotland, where he was honourably received by King Languines. Brisena his wife was

with him, and their daughter Oriana, born in Denmark, and then about ten years old, the fairest creature that ever was seen, wherefore she was called the one without a peer. And because she suffered much at sea it was determined to leave her there. Right gladly did King Languines accept this charge, and his queen said, Believe me, I will take care of her like her own mother. So Lisuarte proceeded ; and, when he arrived at Great Britain, he found those who disturbed him, as is common in such cases, and for this cause he did not send for his daughter. And with great trouble that he took he was king at last, and he was the best king that had yet been, nor was there ever one who better maintained chivalry till King Arthur reigned, who passed in goodness all kings that were before him.

The Child of the Sea was now twelve years old, but in stature and size he seemed fifteen, and he served the queen ; but now that Oriana was there, the queen gave her the Child of the Sea that he should serve her, and Oriana said that *it pleased her*, and that word which she said the child kept in his heart, so that he never lost it from his memory, and in all his life he was never weary of serving her, and his heart was surrendered to her, and this love lasted as long as they lasted, for as well as he loved her did she also love him. But the Child of the Sea, who knew nothing of her love, thought himself presumptuous to have placed his thoughts on her, and dared not to speak to her ; and she who loved him in her heart was careful not to speak more with him than with another ; but their eyes delighted to reveal to the heart what was the thing on earth that they loved best. And now the time came that he thought he *could take arms* if he were knighted, and this he

1

greatly desired, thinking that he would do such things, that, if he lived, his mistress should esteem him. With this desire he went to the king, who was at that time in the garden, and fell upon his knees before him, and said, Sire, if it please you, it is time for me to receive knighthood. How, Child of the Sea! said Languines, are you strong enough to maintain knighthood? it is easy to receive, but difficult to maintain; and he who would keep it well, so many and so difficult are the things he must achieve, that his heart will often be troubled; and if, through fear, he forsakes what he ought to do, better is death to him than life with shame. Not for this, replied he, will I fail to be a knight: my heart would not require it, if it were not in my will to accomplish what you say. And since you have bred me up, compleat what you ought to do in this; if not, I will seek some other who will do it. The king, who feared lest he should do this, replied, Child of the Sea, I know when this is fitting better than you can know, and I promise you to do it, and your arms shall be got ready; but, to whom did you think to go?—To King Perion, who they say is a good knight, and has married the sister of your queen. I would tell him how I was brought up by her, and then he would willingly fulfil my desire. Now, said the king, be satisfied, it shall be honourably done. And he gave orders that the arms should be made, and sent to acquaint Gandales thereof.

When Gandales heard this, he greatly rejoiced; and sent a damsel with the sword, and the ring, and the letter in the wax, which he had found in the ark. The Child of the Sea was with Oriana and the ladies of the palace, discoursing, when a page entered, and

told him there was a stranger damsel without, who brought presents for him, and would speak with him. When she who loved him heard this, her heart trembled, and if any one had been looking at her they might have seen how she changed; and she told the Child of the Sea to let the damsel come in, that they might see the presents. Accordingly she entered, and said, Sir Child of the Sea, your good friend Gandales salutes you as the man who loves you much, and sends you this sword, and this ring, and this wax, and he begs you will wear this sword while you live for his sake. He took the presents, and laid the ring and the wax in his lap, while he unrolled the sword from a linen cloth in which it was wrapt, wondering that it should be without a scabbard. Meantime Oriana took up the wax, and said, I will have this, not thinking that it contained any thing: it would have better pleased him if she had taken the ring, which was one of the finest in the world. While he was looking at the sword, the king came in and asked him, what he thought of it. It seems a goodly one, sir, said he, but I marvel wherefore it hath no scabbard. It is fifteen years, said the king, since it had one; and, taking him by the hand, he led him apart, and said, You would be a knight, and you know not whether of right you should be one. I therefore tell you all that I know concerning you, and with that he told him all that Gandales had communicated. The Child of the Sea answered, I believe this, for that damsel said, my good friend Gandales had sent her, and I thought she had mistaken, and should have called him my father; but I am nothing displeased herewith, except that I know not my parents, nor they me, for my heart tells me *I am well born*; and now, Sir, it behoves me more

to obtain knighthood, that I may win honour and the praise of prowess, since I know not my lineage, and am like one whose kindred are all dead. When the king heard him speak thus, he believed that he would prove a hardy and good knight.

As they were thus conversing, a knight came to inform the king, that King Perion was arrived. Languines went to welcome him as one who knew how to do honour to all; and, after they had saluted, he asked how it was that he came so unexpectedly. I come to seek for friends, replied Perion, of whom I have more need than ever, for King Abies of Ireland wars upon me, and is now with all his power in my country, and Daganel, his half-brother, is with him, and both together have collected such a multitude against me, that I stand in need of all my friends and kinsmen, for I have lost many of my people in battle already, and others whom I trusted have failed me. Brother, replied Languines, your misfortunes grieve me not a little, and I shall aid you the best I can. Agraves, who was already knighted, now came and knelt before his father, saying, Sir, I beg a boon. The which being granted, for King Languines loved him as himself, he pursued,—I request that I may go to defend the queen my aunt. And I grant it, answered Languines, and you shall be as honourably and well accompanied as may be.

This while had the Child of the Sea been looking earnestly at Perion, not as his father, for of that he knew nothing, but because of his great goodness in arms, of which he had heard the fame; and he desired to be made a knight by his hand, rather than by any man in the world. To attain this purpose, he thought best to entreat the queen; but her he found so sad

that he would not speak to her ; and going to where Oriana was, he knelt before her, and said, Lady Oriana, could I know by you the cause of the queen's sadness ? Oriana's heart leaped at seeing him whom she most loved before her, and she said to him, Child of the Sea, this is the first thing ye ever asked of me, and I shall do it with a good will.—Ah, lady ! I am neither so bold nor worthy as to ask any thing from one like you, but rather to obey what it pleases you to command. What ! said she, is your heart so feeble ?—So feeble, that in all things towards you it would fail me, except in serving you like one who is not his own, but yours. Mine ! said she, since when ?—Since *it pleased you*.—How *since it pleased me* ?—Remember, lady, the day whereon your father departed, the queen took me by the hand, and leading me before you, said, I give you this child to be your servant ; and you said *it pleased you*. And from that time I have held and hold myself yours to do you service : yours only, that neither I nor any other while I live can have command over me. That word, said she, you took with a meaning that it did not bear, but *I am well pleased* that it is so. Then was he overcome with such pleasure, that he had no power to answer, and Oriana, who now saw the whole power that she had over him, went to the queen and learnt the cause of her sadness, and, returning to the Child of the Sea, told him, that it was for the queen her sister, who now was so distressed. He answered, If it pleased you that I were a knight, with your leave I would go and aid the queen her sister. With my leave ! and what without it ? would you not then go ? No, said he ; for without the favour of her whose it is, my heart could not sustain itself in danger. Then Oriana smiled, and said,

since I have gained you, you shall be my knight, and you shall aid the sister of the queen. The Child of the Sea kissed her hand,—the king my master has not yet knighted me, and I had rather it should be done by King Perion at your entreaty. In that, said she, I will do what I can, but we must speak to the Princess Mabilia, for her request will avail with her uncle.

Mabilia, who loved the Child of the Sea with pure love, readily agreed. Let him go, said she, to the chapel of my mother, armed at all points, and we and the other damsels will accompany him; and when King Perion is setting off, which will be before day-break, I will ask to see him, and then will he grant our request, for he is a courteous knight. When the Child of the Sea heard this, he called Gandalin, and said to him, My brother, take all my arms secretly to the queen's chapel, for this night I think to be knighted, and, because it behoves me to depart right soon, I would know if you wish to bear me company? Believe me, quoth Gandalin, never with my will shall I depart from ye. The tears came in the eyes of the Child at this, and he kissed him in the face, and said, do now what I told you. Gandalin laid the arms in the chapel, while the queen was at supper; and, when the cloths were removed, the Child of the Sea went there, and armed himself all, save his head and his hands, and made his prayer before the altar, beseeching God to grant him success in arms, and in the love which he bore his lady.

When the queen had retired, Oriana and Mabilia went with the other damsels to accompany him, and Mabilia sent for Perion as he was departing; and, when he came, she besought him to do what Oriana the daughter of King Lisuarte should request. Wil-

lingly, said King Perion, for her father's sake. Then Oriana came before him; and when he saw her, how fair she was, he thought there could not be found her equal in the world. She begged a boon, and it was granted. Then, said she, make this my Gentleman* knight; and she showed him to Perion, kneeling before the altar. The king saw him how fair he was, and approaching him, said, Would you receive the order of knighthood?—I would.—In the name of God, then! and may He order it that it be well bestowed on you, and that you may grow in honour as you have in person. Then, putting on the right spur, he said, Now are you a knight, and may receive the sword. The king took the sword, and gave it to him, and the child girded it on. Then, said Perion, According to your manner and appearance, I would have performed this ceremony with more honours, and I trust in God that your fame will prove that so it ought to have been done. Mabilia and Oriana then joyfully kissed the king's hands, and he, commending the Child of the Sea to God, went his way.

But he who was now a knight, took leave of the damsels who had watched with him, and Oriana, whose heart was bursting though she dissembled that, led him aside, and said, Child of the Sea, I judge of you too well to think you are the son of Gandales: if you know any thing of this, tell me. So he told all that from King Languines he had heard, and she, greatly rejoicing thereat, commended him to God. He found Gandalin at the palace-door holding his lance and his shield, and his horse; and he mounted and went his way, unseen of any, for it was yet night.


* An awkward word, but *mi Donzel* cannot here be rendered otherwise.

They rode on till the noon was past, and then refreshed themselves with the food which Gandalin had brought. And when evening came, they heard in the wood the voice as of a man in great suffering; wherefore the knight rode presently that way. He found a knight dead, and hard by him another sorely wounded, and a woman upon him, who made him so cry out, for she was thrusting her hands into his wounds. Help me, sir knight, he cried, and let me not be murdered by this wretch! The woman at that fled, and the Child of the Sea alighted, and took the wounded man, who had swooned away, in his arms, and so dealt with him that he revived, and cried, Take me where I may have some help for my soul, for I am slain! Take courage, sir knight, said the Child, and tell me how this happened. It is that wicked woman, he replied, whom I took to wife, and last night she forsook me to go with another, whom ye now see lying dead. After I had slain him, I told her that I would forgive her if she would dishonour me no more; but she, seeing how weak I was with the loss of blood, fell upon me, and thrust her hands into the wounds to kill me, so that well I perceive I cannot long live. Therefore I beseech ye, good sir, help me to an hermitage which is near at hand. And they laid him upon Gandalin's horse, and went towards the hermitage.

But the woman, who had a little before sent for her three brothers to save her from her husband, met them now, whom she had no sooner espied, than she exclaimed, Help me! for that wicked knight, who goes yonder, is carrying away my husband, whom he hath well nigh slain. Follow him, and kill him, and the man with him, who is as bad as he. This she said that her guilt might not be known, and she went on her palfrey to

shew them the way. The Child of the Sea by this had left the wounded knight and was proceeding, when they overtook him, and cried, Stop, traitor! You lie, replied the Child, I am no traitor, and shall defend myself well from treason: come on like knights! He broke his lance upon the first, whom he drove to the earth, both him and his horse, whence they could neither arise; then took his shield from Gandalin, and so played his part that he lightly discomfited the twain. The woman attempted to fly, but Gandalin stayed her. Then, said one of the brethren, We know not, sir, whether this battle hath been for right or wrong; and he then related what his sister had told him. The Child blessed himself at hearing this, and told them how she had murdered her husband, and he took them to mercy on condition that they should carry her and her husband to King Languines, and tell the king that a young knight, who had that day sallied out, had sent them to be at his judgment.

CHAP. VI.—How Urganda gave the lance to the Child of the Sea, and how he delivered King Perion from those who would have slain him.

HEN the Child of the Sea gave his shield and helmet to Gandalin, and proceeded. They had not ridden far, when they saw a damsel coming on her palfrey, and she had in her hand a lance with its belt, and presently another damsel, who came by a different path, joined her, and they both came on communing together. When they reached him, she with the weapon said, Take this lance, sir, and I tell you that within three days it will stand ye in good stead, as therewith ye shall deliver from death the house whence

ye are descended. He, wondering at her words, replied, How, damsel, can a house live or die? She answered, So it will be ; and this lance I give you for some services which from you I expect ; the first whereof shall be when you shall do an honour to one of your friends, whereby he shall be put into the worst danger that any knight hath been these ten years space. Damsel, said he, such honour, if God please, I will not do my friend. She answered, So it will be,—and spurred her palfrey, and departed. Now this was Urganda the Unknown.

The other damsel who remained, then said to him, Sir knight, I am from a strange land, and, if it please you, will abide with you till the third day, and defer my journey to my mistress. Whence are you ? said he.—From Denmark.—And he knew this was truth, for he remembered the language of Oriana in her childhood. Then, said he, if ye please, damsel, to go with me, I will defend ye to my power ; but I pray ye, know ye that other damsel ? Never till this meeting : she told me that lance was for the best knight in the world ; and desired me, after her departure, to tell ye that she bare you great affection, and that her name was Urganda the Unknown. Ah God ! quoth he, how unfortunate I am ! and I cannot find her against her will ! And thus devising they went until the dark evening overtook them.

At this time they met a squire, who asked where they were going. Along the road, replied the Child. That, quoth he, is true ; but if you mean to have lodging, ye must turn aside from it. There is no dwelling-place near, except my father's castle, and there shall ye be well entertained. And this the squire did, because *far on* was a castle which they could not pass without

doing battle, and he had never seen the combat of knights errant. So they were well served that night, and on the morrow when they departed, the squire said he would bring them again into their way, as far as a castle which they must pass.

After riding about three leagues they saw the castle, and a goodly one it seemed, for before it ran a river, and it had a drawbridge, whereon was a fair tower at the end. The damsel and the squires rode first, but as soon as the damsel attempted to pass, six fellows armed with cuirasses and head-pieces seized her bridle, and told her to swear or she should die. Swear what? quoth she. Swear never to show favour to your lover till he promise you to help King Abies against King Perion. With that she cried aloud for help, and the Child of the Sea caught a hatchet from one of the ruffians, and felled him. The rest fell upon him; one he sliced to the eyes, another from the shoulder to the ribs: seeing this their comrades fled. Now damsel proceed, quoth he, and evil be to them that encourage such villainy. But now as they went on, a great noise was heard in the castle, and the damsel told him to take his arms. Fear not, said he, where ladies are so evil intreated, there can be no men worth any thing. Sir, quoth she, I dare not go on unless you take your arms. So he took them, and proceeded through the gate of the castle, where they met a squire lamenting aloud,—Ah God, they are killing the best knight in the world for not taking an oath which he cannot keep! The Child of the Sea passed him, and saw King Perion beset by two knights and ten halberders, who had slain his horse, and now assailed him on all sides, crying, Swear or die. Traitors! quoth the Child, *you shall die for him.* With that they called to the

porter to shut the castle-gate; and half of them leaving King Perion fell upon the knight. But soon had he slain the two knights, and rode among the halberders, scattering them, till, with the king's help, they were all slain, except some some few who got upon the walls. But then the Child alighted and followed them, and some in their fear leapt down, two only fled into a chamber, where lay an old knight, so aged that he could not rise, who cried out, From whom are ye flying, villains?—From a knight, who hath played the devil* in your castle, killed both your nephews, and all our comrades. The Child of the Sea had followed them, and bade them shew him their master or he would slay them; and, when he saw the old man in bed, he blessed himself, and said, Thou old wretch! art thou on the very edge of the grave, and dost thou maintain such customs? With these words he made offer to smite off his head. Ah, mercy! quoth the old man. Swear then, said the knight, that, while thou livest, no more such treason be maintained here. Whereto the old man right gladly took his oath. Now tell me, wherefore hast thou heretofore kept this custom?—For the love of King Abies of Ireland, who is my nephew, and because I could not aid him with my body, I wished to assist him with such knights errant as passed this way. False villain! quoth the Child of the Sea. With that he kicked down the bed, and the old man with it, and, commending him to all the devils, he left him, and went down into the court, and took the horse of one of the knights whom he had slain, and leading it to King Perion, cried, Mount, sir! for I little like this place, and those who are in it. They then departed.


* Que faze diabluras.

The Child of the Sea would not take off his helmet, lest the king should know him, and when Perion asked who he was that had succoured him in such need, he persisted in concealing himself, till the damsel took his helmet off, then presently Perion knew him, that it was the youth whom he had knighted at the ladies' request, and embracing him he said, Truly I now know you better than before. Sir, quoth the Child, I knew you well, that it was you who gave me the order of knighthood, wherewith, so please it God, I shall serve you in your wars in Gaul. They came at length to a double way, and the knight asked Perion which way he took. The left, answered the king, for it leadeth to my country. God have you then in his keeping, quoth the Child, for I must take the right. Then said Perion, I pray you remember your promise. So took they leave of each other. The damsel then said to the Child of the Sea, Sir knight, I have hitherto kept ye company, because the damsel who gave you the lance said she brought it for the best knight in the world, and surely I have seen so much that I know it was a truth. Now I will shape my course towards my lady. And who is she? Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte. But when he heard his lady named, his heart trembled in such sort that he had nigh fallen from his horse. Gandalin, who saw him totter, ran to him, and he cried, My heart faileth me! The damsel, thinking some sudden sickness was the cause thereof, would have had him unarmed, but he told her it was needless, and that he was liable to such seizures. They then parted company: the damsel and the squire toward the court of Languines, and the Child of the Sea and Gandalin going where fortune guided them.

Two days they rode without adventure, and on the

third about mid-day arrived in sight of a goodly castle, that belonged to Galpano, the most valliant knight in those parts, but who followed the service of the wicked enemy, instead of the Lord's, who had endowed him with strength and courage. He had a custom to make all ladies and damsels that passed his castle enter in, where forcibly he took his will of them, and made them swear never to take other lovers than him, which, if they refused, he beheaded them, and what knights came he made combat with his two brethren, whom, if they conquered, he would force the conqueror to deal with himself, who was the strongest knight in all that country, and he made them swear to call themselves the conquered by Galpano, else he cut off their heads; and, when they had sworn, he stript them of all they had, and sent them away afoot.

CHAP. VII.—Of the battle which the Child of the Sea had with Galpano and his people.

S the Child of the Sea approached the castle he met a damsel accompanied by a squire and page, she was a fair damsel, and her hair was beautiful which she rent as she went along, and made great lamentation. When the knight heard how she had suffered from the custom of that castle, he took her bridle and said, Come with me and I shall avenge you. So they rode on and entered the base court where was a knight on horseback who said to him, Come on and receive your dishonour! Tell me, quoth the Child, art thou the villain who forced this lady? No, said he, but if I were, what wouldst thou then? Revenge her, said *the Child of the Sea*. The knight of the castle then

spurred his horse and ran at him full speed, but the Child meeting him in full career gave him such greeting, that shield nor breast plate availed, for the lance went through his shoulder and he fell down dead. The Child drew out the lance and met the second knight so directly that he rent his helmet from his head and bore him to the ground. He cried out for help, whereon three halberders issued out, to whom he said Kill this traitor ! they all ran violently on the Child and slew his horse, but he lightly rose, and first he drove his lance through the knight, between the ear and neck, then bestirred himself against the other three, who coming behind had wounded him in the shoulder, so that he lost much blood, full well he recompensed the villain that did it, for he clove him down to the chest. The others fled, crying aloud for help, the Child leapt on the horse of one of the knights and followed, and he saw a knight unarmed at a door who cried out to him what hath moved thee to come here and kill my people ? Sir, quoth the damsel, this is the villain ? Villain, said the Child, dearly shalt thou pay for thy disloyal dealing, go arm thee, else I will slay thee naked as thou art, for to such wretches there should be no mercy shown. But the damsel cried out, kill him, that he live not to abuse any more, for that will be to your account. Ah, wretch ! quoth he, in an evil hour came he hither in thy company, and he went in telling the Child to wait for him, for it was no use to fly.

Galpano soon came armed into the court, mounted on a lusty white courser, and cried to the Child,* well mayest thou repent the time that ever thou sawest this

* *Ay Cavallero Malandante*.—The phrase is untranslatable. *Erring knight* has something of the same play upon the phrase.

damsel, for it will cost thee thy head. Thereat in anger he replied, Each must guard his own, and let he who cannot, lose it. Without longer stay they couched their spears, which in their encounter pierced through shield and armour to the flesh, and so forcibly did shields, helmets and bodies clash together that they both fell. Soon they arose, and laid hand to sword, and threw their shields before them and began a fierce combat. The splinters of their shields were strewn about, and pieces of their armours, and their helmets were battered and broken, and the ground whereon they fought covered with their blood. Galpano who felt a sore wound in his head drew back to wipe away the blood from his eyes. How now Galpano? quoth the Child, dost thou not remember that we fight for our heads, and if thou defendest not thy own thou wilt lose it! Be patient awhile, answered Galpano, and let us breathe a little, we have time enough to make an end. Not so, said the Child, I do not combat thee for courtesy! and so fiercely then he smote him that he bent his knees to the ground, yet quickly he arose and defended himself; but the Child pressed him that he could scarce lift his sword, and now sought only to protect himself with the shield, and the shield was hewn away piecemeal, then having no remedy he fled, and would have got into a tower where his men were, but the child overtook him by the steps, and caught him by the helmet, and smote his head from his shoulders, then turning to the damsel, said, now may ye chuse another lover, for this to whom ye swore hath discharged ye from your vow. He would have ascended the tower, but the steps were drawn up, then mounting the horse of Galpano which was a goodly one, he said, let us be gone. I will take the head of

this villain, said she, and present it to the knight to whom I am sent on your behalf. The Child answered, not the head, that will be troublesome; take the helmet instead, and he asked to whom she was going. To Agrayes, said she, son of the King of Scotland, she then by her importunity learnt who had succoured her, and went her way.

The Child rode on, but he bled fast along the way, and the white horse was stained with his blood, about the hour of vespers he saw a castle, from whence an unarmed knight came out to meet him, and asked him where he took those wounds.—In a castle not far behind.—And that horse?—I took him in the place of my own which they slew there.—And where is the knight whose he was? He has lost his head, said the Child. Then would the knight have kissed his feet, saying, Ah, sir, you are right welcome, for by you have I recovered my honour! for this was one whom Galpano had conquered. Sir knight, then said the Child, where can I find some remedy for my wounds? In my house, he replied; my niece shall cure ye better than any other in this land. So he caused him to be unarmed, and laid in a sumptuous bed, where his wounds were looked to by the lady, who told him that if he could rest there for a few days, he would be made whole.

CHAP. VIII.—How the three Knights came to the Court of King Languines, and the other Knight in the litter, and his traitorous Wife, by command of Amadis.



ON the third day after the Child of the Sea had left the court of King Languines, the three brethren arrived there with their false sister and her wounded husband in a litter, and they delivered

the woman into the king's hand, on the part of a new knight who had lately left his court. The king blest himself at hearing the woman's wickedness, and, turning to the wounded man, said, Methinks so wicked a woman as your wife deserveth not to live. Sire, said he, do therein what you think fit, but I never will consent to kill the thing I most love. So the brethren then took leave of the king, and carried with them the wounded knight, leaving their sister to receive judgment. The king said to her, Thy husband is more loyal to thee, than thou hast been to him ; but ye shall dearly abide your falsehood. And he made her be burnt.

Languines marvelled much who the knight could be, for no one but Oriana, and the damsels who had been with her, knew that the Child of the Sea was knighted, and the king thought he was gone to visit Gandales. The squire was standing by who had lodged him, and afterward conducted him to the castle where he delivered King Perion. It may be, quoth he, a young knight, with whom I and a damsel of Denmark that is here, kept company for a while. Know you his name ? said Languines.—No, sire ; but he is young, and exceeding fair, and I saw him do such rare deeds of chivalry in so little time, that in mine opinion, if he live, he will prove one of the best knights in the world. Then discoursed he of all that he had seen him atchieve in rescue of King Perion, and added, Mayhap the damsel who came hither with me can tell ye more tidings of him, for I met them together. Presently was she sent for, whereupon she declared so much as she knew, chiefly, how Urganda brought him the lance, and said it was for the best knight in the world ; but in sooth, quoth she, I know *not his name*, for never could I learn it of him. Ah

God ! said the king, who may it be ? Now she who loved him, doubted not who it was ; but she was in great trouble, for the king her father had sent for her, and loath was she to go where she could not so often receive news from him whom she loved more than herself.

After six days, as the king was conferring with his son Agraves, who now was about departing to succour the king his uncle, there came in a damsel and knelt to the prince, and said, Sir, hear me a while before the king your father. Then took she in her hand a helmet, with so many sword-dints and breaches that there was not a sound place in it. Take, sire, this helmet instead of the head of Galpano. I present it to you on the part of a young knight, whom of all living it best becomes to follow arms, and this he sends you because Galpano dishonoured a damsel who was going on your service. What ! quoth the king, is Galpano overcome by the hand of one man ? This certainly must be the same young knight. And he asked the damsel if she knew his name. That learnt I, she answered, with great importunity. He is called the Child of the Sea. Ah ! quoth Agraves, where may I find him ?—My lord, he commendeth himself to you, giving you to understand that you shall find him at the wars. Great was the joy for these good tidings of the Child of the Sea : but above all was his lady Oriana rejoiced, though she concealed it. The king enquired from the damsels how he was knighted, and when they told him by their means, he replied, More courtesy hath he found in you than in me ; though I only delayed, thinking he was yet too young. The damsel now delivered her bidding to Agraves, and he *departed with a good company for Gaul.*

CHAP. IX.—How King Lisuarte sent to the house of King Languines for his daughter Oriana, and he sent her, and with her his daughter Mabilia; and how the Child of the Sea and Arayes went to succour King Perion of Gaul.

ABOUT ten days after the departure of the prince, there came three ships from Great Britain, wherein as chief was the good knight Galdar de Rascuyl, accompanied by an hundred knights, and with a suitable train of dames and damsels for Oriana. Lisuarte sent them to give to King Languines his hearty thanks for the gentle entreatance of the princess his daughter, and to request that Mabilia would now come with her, who should be in like manner received and entertained. Right joyfully did Languines consent, and adorned them well, and made due preparations for their voyage. Oriana, knowing that she must needs go, made ready; and when she was putting her jewels in order, she found among them the wax which she had taken from the Child of the Sea. That recollection brought tears into her eyes, and she clasped her hands in thought, so that the wax brake, and she saw the writing within, and read, This is Amadis, son of a king; but, when she had read this, never did such joy enter the heart of man as she felt. Without delay she called the damsel of Denmark, and said to her, My friend, I will tell you something which no other than you and my own heart must know; therefore, do you keep it as the secret of such a princess as I am, and of the best knight in the world. That will I do, quoth the damsel, and doubt not to confide in me. Then so it is, dear friend, said Oriana, you must go and seek that young knight whom you *know*—he is called the Child of the Sea, and ye shall

find him at the war in Gaul : if he be not there, await his coming, and give him this writing, wherein he shall find his name written at the time when he was cast into the sea. He is the son of a king, and, if he was so good when he knew not who he was, now will he be yet better. And tell him that I am sent for to my father's court, and I bid him, when he leaves the war, come there also, that he may dwell there till I appoint him what to do. With this errand the damsel of Denmark set out for Gaul. The princesses now embarked, Languines and the queen commending them to God. The weather was prosperous, and in a short time they reached Great Britain.

The Child of the Sea remained fifteen days in that castle, where the damsel looked to his wounds, and then, though they were hardly healed, departed. It was on a Sunday morning that he and Gandalin took leave of his host and his gentle leech, and entered a great forest. This was in the month of April, and he heard the birds sing in the wood, and saw the flowers on all sides, and then he thought of his love, and said aloud, Ah Child without lands and without lineage ! how hast thou dared to place thy heart upon her who excels all other in goodness, and beauty, and parentage ? For each of these three things the best knight should not dare to love her, for more avails her beauty than the worth of the best knight in the world, and her goodness than the wealth of the wealthiest ; and I, who know not what I am, must live with the pain of my own rashness, and die without declaring it ! He had made this moan with his head hanging down, and now looking up he espied a knight on horseback, who had overheard him. The knight perceiving that *he stopt, came before him and said, It seems you love*

your mistress, sir, better than yourself, when in commending her you dispraise yourself : tell me who she is, that I may love her, as you by your own confession are not worthy. Sir knight, replied the Child, you have some reason for what you say, but you shall know nothing more, and, if you were to love her, you would have no success. The knight answered, Toil and danger for the love of one's lady ought to be deemed an honour, for at the end comes the reward, and he that loveth in so high a place as you do, should not be aggrieved at aught that may happen. The Child of the Sea thought that he spake well, and would have proceeded, but the other cried, Stay, knight, for either by will or by force you must tell me what I demanded ! Go to, then ! quoth the child. So gan they lace their helmets, and took their shields and lances, and as they were separating for the joust, a damsel came up and cried, Stay, knights, and answer me one thing first, for I am in haste, and cannot tarry the end of your combat. At these words they stayed.—Have you seen a young knight called the Child of the Sea ? And what would you with him ? said the Child.—I bring him tidings from his friend Agrayas, son of the King of Scotland. Wait a little, replied he, and I will give ye news of him—and with that he turned towards the knight, who was calling to him to defend himself. They ran their course : the lance of the knight flew up in shivers, and both he and his horse were borne to the ground. The horse rose and was starting away, but the child caught him and said, Sir knight, take your horse, and henceforth seek not to know any thing against a man's will.

Then turning to the damsel, he asked her if she *knew* him for whom she enquired ? No, said she, but

Agrayes told me he would make himself known so soon as I should say that I came from him. Right, quoth the Child, for I am he ! And with these words he unlaced his helmet ; and when she saw his face, the damsel cried, In truth do I believe it, for I have heard him speak wonders of your beauty.—Where did you leave Agrayes ?—Hard by the shore, not far hence, where he is about to embark with his troops for Gaul, and he wished to learn tidings of you, that you might cross with him. God reward him ! said the Child, lead on and show the way.

They soon came to the shore whereon the tents were pitched ; and being now near them, they heard a voice behind, Stay, knight, for you shall tell me what I asked. He turned, and saw the knight whom he had dismounted, and another now with him, and taking his arms met them both with their spears in rest and careering at him, full speed. And they from the tents saw him how firm he rode in the saddle, so that they marvelled, for there was no knight of his time who rode better, or jousted with more grace, so that by this he was often discovered when he wished not to be known. Their both spears struck his shield which failed him, but his breast-plate not. He ran at the knight whom he had before overthrown, and threw him again so roughly that in the fall he brake his arm. The Child lost his lance ; he turned with his sword against the other, and gave it him on the head that he pierced the helmet, and he drew back the sword so forcibly that the laces brake, and the helmet came with the sword. The Child then passed the sword to his left hand, and caught his enemy's shield, and plucked it from his neck and dashed it on his head,

so that he fell stunned. Then the Child gave his arms to Gandalin, and proceeded to the tents.

Agraves went to meet him, wondering who he might be that had so soon discomfited two knights, he knew him, and they embraced, and there was great joy when it was known that the Child of the Sea was arrived. The prince then sent for the two knights to his tent. Believe me, friends, said he, you attempted great folly to meddle with this knight. True, said he with the broken arm, yet I saw him in such plight that I little thought to find any resistance from him ! and then he told what had past in the forest, only the lamentation of the Child he durst not repeat.

The next day they decamped, and rode to Palingues, a sea-town opposite to Gaul. Then they entered the ships of Agraves, and with fair wind soon reached a town in Gaul, called Galfan, and from thence the Castle Baladin, wherein was King Perion, who had lost many of his people, and was right glad of their coming. Agraves went to visit Queen Elisena, taking with him the Child of the Sea, and two other knights of good account. When Perion saw the Child, he took him by the hand and led him to the queen.—This is the good knight, of whom I told ye heretofore, who defended me from the greatest danger that ever I was in, and this I tell you that you may love him better than any other knight. The queen advanced herself to embrace him, and he fell on his knee and said, Lady, I am the servant of your sister, and for her sake come to serve you, with like obedience as to her person. The queen thanked him lovingly, and seeing him how fair he was, she thought of her own sons who were lost, and the tears came ; so she wept for *him* who was before her, and she knew him not. Do

not weep, lady, quoth he, you shall be restored to your chearfulness with the help of God, and the king, and this knight your nephew, and me, who willingly will serve you. When Agrayes departed he would have taken the Child with him, but Elisena said he was her sister's knight, and should be lodged with them. So he became his mother's guest.

King Abies and Daganel soon heard that succour was arrived. Now, said the king, if King Perion has a heart to fight he will give us battle. Daganel replied, he feareth you too much, for Abies was then the best knight known. Galayn, Duke of Normandy, who was present, then said, I will tell you how we will make him. Daganel and I will set out to-night, and at break of day we will appear before his town with a reasonable force. King Abies with the rest of the army shall lie in ambush in the forest. He will take heart and sally out upon us ; we will feign a fear, and take flight towards the forest, and there shall they all be destroyed. You say well, replied Abies, let it be done. Presently they and all their people were armed and entered the forest, and there the king remained, while Daganel and Galayn proceeded.


When the morning came, Perion and the queen went into the Child's chamber, whom they found rising and washing his hands, and they saw that his eyes were red and his cheeks marked with tears, so that it was plain he had slept little that night, and truly he had been thinking of his lady, and how hopeless his love was, and that death was all he could expect. Queen Elisena took Gandalin aside, and asked him the cause of his master's sadness, if it was for any offence that he had received there. He replied, *He hath received great honour here, and this,*

madam, is his custom : he is wont to weep at night, as you see. While they were discoursing, the townsmen saw their enemies near, and shouted, to arms ! to arms ! Right glad was the Child of the Sea at this alarm : they armed themselves and rode to the gate, where they found Agrayes in wrath, because the wardens would not let him go forth, for he was one of the most spirited knights in the world, and if his strength had been like his courage, there would have been none to surpass him in prowess. At the king's command the gates were opened, and all the knights went forth ; but, seeing their enemies to be so great a number, there were some who said it would be folly to attack them. But Agrayes spurred his horse, exclaiming ill luck to him who tarries longer ; and the Child of the Sea had already advanced before him,—so they went to the charge. Daganel and Galayn made ready to receive them as those whom they heartily hated. The Child of the Sea encountered Galayn, who was foremost, and overthrew both man and horse, and the duke brake his leg in the fall. The Child had broken his lance ; he laid hold of his sword, and rode among them, striking on all sides so fiercely that nothing could withstand his blows, till he was beset that his horse could not move for the throng. Agrayes with some of his followers forced their way to him, and made a great destruction among their enemies ; and king Perion with his people came up, whom Daganel as well received. Then were the armies mingled together : there might you have seen the Child of the Sea doing wonders, felling all that opposed him, hewing and chining his enemies, and showing such chivalry that none durst abide him. Agrayes, at seeing him, took the more courage, and

cried aloud to encourage his men, Look at the best knight that ever was born ! When Daganel saw the Child of the Sea, what havoc he made, he made up to him, and strove to kill his horse, that he might fall among the throng ; but that he could not effect, for the Child gave him such a stroke on the helmet that the laces burst, and it fell off, and King Perion, who had come to the Child's succour, with another blow cleft him to the teeth. Then were they of Ireland and the Normans conquered, and they fled to the forest, crying aloud for King Abies that he should not tarry longer, and suffer them to be destroyed ; and Perion and his company pursued till they saw Abies and his main army advance, crying, Set on them ! leave not a man alive ! enter the town with them ! When the knights of Gaul found themselves thus surprised they were affrighted, for they were weary and their lances broken, and King Abies was the best knight in the world, and the one whom they most feared.

But the Child of the Sea cried, Now, sirs, ye must maintain your honour ! it will be seen what each is worth ! The Irish came on like fresh men, and who had a great heart to do mischief. King Abies left not a knight in his saddle so long as his spear lasted ; then drew he his sword, and laid about him so valiantly that King Perion's men could not withstand him, and they retreated towards the town. The Child seeing that, bestirred himself more angrily, and fought in the front, so that he gave the Gauls leisure to retire in some order, and prevented their utter rout. Agraves and Perion always kept by him, and they three were the safety of the host, and enough to do had *those Irishmen* whom Abies had sent forward to enter

the town, that the war might be finished. And now the Gauls had entered the gates, and King Abies came up, hoping that his men had entered with them, and greatly was he grieved to see that it was otherwise, and the more for he now heard how that Galayn and Daganel were slain. One of his people came up to him, and said, Sire, do you see that knight on the white horse, who does nothing but what is marvellous? he it is who slew your captains. It was the Child of the Sea, who rode the white horse of Galpano. With that King Abies rode up to him and said, Knight! thou hast slain the man in the world whom I most love, and dearly shalt thou abide it if thou wilt come out and continue the battle. The Child replied, This is not a time to fight with you: for your men are many in number and fresh, and we are but few, and so travailed, that it is a wonder how we have resisted you; but if ye will show the great hardness for which you are renowned, and revenge him of whom ye speak like a knight, chuse you of your people as many as you think fit, and I will do the same, and then being equal you may gain the more honour; which is not to be won by coming with so great a number to take what is not your own. King Abies replied of how many shall the battle be? Since you leave it in my choice, said the Child, I will propose what may please you better. You are mine enemy for what I have done to-day, and I yours for the wrong you have done this land. It is not reasonable that any other than ourselves should suffer. Let the battle be between you and me, and presently, if you will, only let neither side stir till the end.—So let it be, said Abies; and he called ten of his best knights, who, with ten knights of the Child's party, were



appointed to keep the field. King Perion and Agrayes would have had him delay the combat till the next day, seeing that he was sore wounded ; but he would not be moved, desiring the battle above all things, that he might prove himself against him who had the renown of the best knight in the world, and thinking that if he conquered, the war would be finished, and he might return to his lady Oriana, on whom his heart and all his desires were fixed.

CHAP. X.—Of the battle which the Child of the Sea had with King Abies, and how he conquered him, whereby the war between King Abies and King Perion was concluded.

BUT they on both sides, seeing that the greater part of the day was spent, determined that the combat should be delayed till the morrow, albeit against the will of both champions, and this also they did that their arms might be repaired, and some remedy applied to their wounds, and because both armies being wearied, and having been hardly handled, stood in need of rest. The Child of the Sea therefore entered the town with Agrayes and King Perion, and as he rode along with his head unarmed, the people cried out, Ah, good knight ! God give thee grace to proceed as thou hast begun ! thou art a fair knight, and one upon whom knighthood was well bestowed. As they drew nigh the palace, a damsel met them, and said to the Child of the Sea, that the queen desired he would not be disarmed any where but in her apartments. This was at the king's desire, who now said, friend, you must needs grant this request, and Agrayes must bear you company. So they went thither, where they found the

queen, and with her many ladies and damsels ready to disarm them, but the queen would suffer none of them to touch the Child of the Sea, whom she herself disarmed, and threw a mantle over him. The king then came and saw how he was wounded, and asked him why he had not delayed the day of battle. It had been needless, quoth the Child; I have no wound to detain me. So they presently dressed his wounds, and the supper was brought.

On the morrow the queen and her ladies went to visit them, and they found them conversing with the king. Then mass was said, which being ended, the Child armed himself, not in the arms which he had worn yesterday, for they had been so dealt with that they were useless, but in a rich and goodly armour. Then he took leave of the queen, and mounted a fresh horse. King Perion carried his helm, and an old knight called Aganon his lance, and Prince Agrayes his shield, whereon were pourtrayed two azure lions in a field of gold, rampant the one against the other. They went out from the town, and found King Abies mounted on a large black courser, armed at all points save his head. The townsmen and those of the host placed themselves where they might best see the combat. The lists were marked out, and scaffolding erected round them. Then they laced on their helmets. King Abies hung round his neck a shield, which bore a giant in a field azure, and a knight beheading him, for so he had once slain a giant who had lain waste his country. When they both had taken their arms, all who were in the lists went out, each commending their own champion to God; and the two knights ran at each other, as they who were of great strength and good heart. At the first encounter all their arms failed, the

lances pierced through shield and breast plate, and into the flesh, and the staves flew in pieces, and they met body to body and horse to horse so furiously that both fell, and all the beholders thought them dead; but soon they rose, and plucked the spear-heads from the wound, and engaged so fiercely with their swords that it was fearful to see them. Yet the combat seemed unequal, not that the Child of the Sea was not well made and of goodly stature, but King Abies was so large that there was no knight whom he did not exceed in stature by a palm, and his limbs were like those of a giant; he was, however, beloved by his people, and had in him all good qualities except that he was too proud. The battle between them was cruel and without any respite, and their strokes resounded like the fight of twenty knights. They sliced away the shields, and battered the helmets, and hewed away the harness, and each bled so fast, that it was a wonder how they could endure, and thus they continued till the hour* of tierce; and then the sun grew hot and heated their armour, so that they began to wax somewhat feeble.

At this time King Abies drew back. Hold! said he, and let us rest if you will: thou art the best knight that ever I combated withal—but I shall not for that spare thee, for thou hast killed him whom I loved best, and now putttest me to shame that the battle should last so long, before so many good men. The Child of the Sea answered him, King Abies, thou hast shame for this, and not for entering this country in thy pride, and doing so much evil to him who had not deserved it at thy hands! Remember that men, and kings especially, are not to do what they *can* but what they

* Nine in the morning.

ought. And now thou wishest to rest !—so have they whom you in your oppression would not allow to rest ; and that you may feel what you have made others feel, look to yourself, for you shall not rest here. Abies then took his sword and the little of his shield that was left ; To thy own misfortune dost thou brave me, quoth he, for thou shalt not leave these lists till I have cut off thy head. Do thy utmost ! replied the Child. Herewith more cruelly than before they renewed the battle, as if it were even then begun. King Abies, who was well practised in arms, fought warily now, warding the sword of his antagonist and striking where the blow could injure most ; but the lightness and promptitude of the Child made him in the end lose ground. And now has the Child destroyed all the remaining part of his shield, and wounded him so often that the sword turned in his hand for weakness, and so prest he was that he gave back, and almost turned to fly, seeking some safety against that sword that so cruelly he felt. But, when he saw no remedy but death, he grasped his sword in both hands, and smote at the Child, thinking to hew his helmet ; the shield caught the blow, and the sword pierced in so deep that Abies could not pull it forth. The Child, in return, struck him so fiercely on the left leg that he cut it off, and the king fell. The Child set foot upon him, and, plucking off his helmet, said, Thou art dead, King Abies, if thou dost not yield thyself vanquished ! He replied, I am indeed dead, not vanquished, and my pride has overthrown me. I pray thee, let assurance be given to my people, that they may safely depart and carry me into my own country. I forgive thee and all whom I hated, and all that I have taken from King Perion shall be restored, and I beseech you

let me be confessed. When the Child of the Sea heard this, he was exceeding sorrowful for King Abies, though he knew that he would have been without pity had he been the conqueror; and now the men of the army and of the town assembled in peace, King Abies ordered all his conquests to be restored, and Perion gave assurance to the Irish that they might return in safety. And Abies, having received all the sacraments of the holy church, gave up the ghost; and they carried him to his own country, making great lamentation for his loss.

King Perion and Agrayes, and the chiefs of the realm, then came to the Child, and led him away from the field with such honours as the conquerors in these feats are wont to receive, who by their prowess procure not only glory to themselves, but the welfare of a ruined country. The damsel of Denmark had arrived at the commencement of the battle, and now, seeing how happily it had ended, she came up to him;—Child of the Sea, speak with me apart. He went aside with her, and then she said, Oriana, your mistress, hath sent me, and I bring you from her this writing wherein you shall find your name. He took the writing, but he had heard nothing save the name of his lady, and that had so confused him that the writing fell from his hand, and he dropped the reins upon his horse's neck. What now, sir? quoth she; take you so ill the message that comes from the noblest damsel in the world, and who so dearly loveth you, and hath made me endure so much toil in your search? Friend! said he, I did not hear what you said for this pain which seized me, as you once witnessed heretofore. She answered, you need not dissemble with me. I know both your affairs and my lady's, for she hath

trusted me, and if you love her you do no wrong, for it is not easy to relate how dearly she loveth you. And with that she repeated Oriana's message, and gave him again the writing, which he opened, and saw that his name was Amadis. The damsel having accomplished her errand, would then have returned, but he besought her to remain till the third day, and then he would accompany her. I came to you, she replied, and shall do as you command. The Child then rejoined King Perion, who was awaiting him.

As they entered the city, the people welcomed with shouts their deliverer. So they proceeded to the palace, and in the Child's chamber they found the queen and all her ladies, and they took him in their arms from his horse, and the queen disarmed him, and masters came and searched his wounds, which though many were without danger. The king desired that he and Agraves would eat with him, but he would have no other company than the damsel, to whom he did all the honour that could be devised. Thus he remained some days, nor did his wounds prevent him from walking frequently in the great hall to converse with the damsel, whom he still detained till he could bear arms and accompany her.

CHAP. XI.—How King Perion and Queen Elisena knew the Child of the Sea to be their son Amadis.

T so happened, that as he was one day walking in the hall with the damsel, young Melicia, King Perion's daughter, past by him weeping. He asked her why she wept, and she told him for a ring, which her father had given her to keep while he slept, and which she had lost. I will give

you another as good, said the Child, and he gave her one from his finger. She looked at it, and cried, this is the one I lost. Not so, said he.—Then it is the one in the world most like it. So much the better : you may give it for the other. And, leaving her, he went with the damsel to his chamber, and laid upon his bed, and she upon another that was there.

The king awoke, and asked his daughter for the ring ; then gave she him the same she had of the prince, which he put on, thinking it was his own : but presently he saw his own lying where Melicia had dropt it, and taking it up he compared it with the other, which he then saw was the one which he had given to Elisena, and which she told him, when he had enquired for it, had been lost. He demanded of the little girl how she came by that ring ; and she, who was much afraid of him, told him what had happened. Immediately he began to suspect the queen, that she had fallen into some dishonest liking of the young knight for his great worth and exceeding beauty ; and he took his sword, and went into the queen's chamber, and fastened the door. Madam, said he, you always denied to me the ring which I gave you, and the Child of the Sea has now given it to Melicia ! How came he by it ? if you tell me a lie, your head shall pay for it. Ah God, mercy ! quoth Elisena, and fell at his feet. I will tell you what I have hitherto concealed,* but now you suspect me ! And then she told him how she had exposed the infant, with whom the ring and the sword were placed ; and then she lamented, and beat her face. Holy Mary ! cried the king, I believe that this is our child ! The queen stretched out

* This is an oversight of the Author. Elisena before related the exposure after the loss of Galaor.

her hands,—may it please God ! With that they went into his chamber, whom they found sleeping ; but Elisena wept bitterly because of her husband's suspicion. The king took the Child's sword which was at the bed's-head, and looking at it he knew it well, as one wherewith he had given many and hard blows ; and he said to Elisena, By my God I know the sword ! Then Elisena took the Child by the arm, and wakened him, who awoke in wonder, and asked her why she wept. Ah ! said she, whose son art thou ?—So help me God I know not, for by great hap I was found in the sea ! The queen fell at his feet, hearing him, and he cried, My God ! what is all this ? My son, quoth she, you see your parents !

When the first joy had a little subsided he remembered the writing, and took it from his bosom. Elisena saw it was what Darioleta had written. Ah, my son, quoth she, when last I saw this writing I was in all trouble and anguish, and now am I in all happiness,—blessed be God !

It were long to tell what joy Agraves made and the lords of the realm at this discovery. The damsel of Denmark could now no longer abide. Sir Amadis, said she, I will go carry these good tidings to my lady, for you must tarry to give joy and gladness to those eyes that have shed so many tears for your sake. God have you in his keeping ! replied Amadis. I shall soon follow, and will come in arms like those I wore against King Abies, so shall ye know me.

At this time would Agraves also depart ; for the damsel, when she brought him Galpano's helmet, came with a message from his mistress, Olinda, daughter to King Vanayn of Norway, desiring to see him with all convenient speed. He had won her love when he

was with Galvanes in that kingdom. Now Galvanes was his uncle, and because he had only one poor castle to his heritage, they called him Lackland.* Cousin, said Agrayes, I desire your company above all other things, but I must now go where my heart leads me. Where shall I find you on my return? In the house of King Lisuarte, said Amadis, for there they tell me is chivalry more worthily maintained than in the house of any other king or emperor in the world; and I pray you commend me to your parents, for they as well as you may ever esteem me in their service for the education they gave me. This said, Agrayes took leave of the queen his aunt, and departed with his company. The king and Amadis conducted him through the city. As they were going out of the city gate, they met a damsel who took Perion's bridle, and said to him, King Perion, remember what thou wert told,—how, when thou didst recover thy loss, the kingdom of Ireland should lose its flower. See now if the damsel told thee true! for thou hast found thy son who was lost; and that brave King Abies is slain, who was the flower of Ireland. And now I tell thee, that never shall that country have his like, till the good brother of the Lady shall come, who shall proudly and violently make the tribute of other lands be brought there, and he shall die by the hands of him who must perish for the thing in the world that he loves best. This was Marhaus of Ireland, brother to the queen, whom Sir Trystram de Lyones slew on the quarrel of tribute demanded from King Mark of Cornwall, and Trystram himself was slain afterward because of Queen Isoude, who was the thing in the world that he loved best. And this, said the damsel, my mistress *Urganda* sends me to tell thee. Then, said Amadis,

* Galvanes sin tierra.

Damsel and my friend, say to her who sent you, that the knight to whom she gave the lance commendeth himself to her good grace, being now assured in the matter whereof then she spake, that with that lance I should deliver from death the house from whence I sprung, for I saved with it the king my father. So the damsel returned, and Agrayes went his way.

Then King Perion summoned a cortes, that all might see his son Amadis; and then were great rejoicings and pastimes made in honour of the lord whom God had given them, and many things were done in that cortes, and many and great gifts did the king bestow. And when Amadis heard how the giant had carried away his brother Galaor, he determined to seek him, and recover him by force of arms or otherwise. When the cortes was ended, he requested his father permission to go to Great Britain. Much did the king and queen labour to detain him, but it might not be by reason of the love he bare, which made him obedient to none but his lady. So he clad himself in armour like that which Abies had destroyed in the combat, and taking none with him but Gandalin set forth. They proceeded till they came to the sea, then entered a vessel, and sailed to a goodly city in Great Britain, which is called Bristol.* Here he learnt that King Lisuarte was at his town of Windsor,† whither he shaped his course; but far had he not gone when he met a damsel, who demanded of him if that were her ready way to Bristol, and if she could find shipping there for her speedy passage into Gaul. Whom seek you there? said he.—The good knight Amadis, who is the king's son, and has not long known his father. Greatly did Amadis marvel thereat,

* Brestoya.

† Vindilisora.

and he asked her from whom she heard thereof. I know it, quoth she, from her to whom nothing is hidden, from Urganda the unknown, who now stands in such need of him, that by no other can she obtain what she desires. Thanks to God ! replied Amadis, she who can assist all, now requires me to assist her. Let us go, for I am the man whom ye seek. And he forsook his road, and followed her.

CHAP. XII.—How Don Galaor was made a knight by Amadis of Gaul his brother.

MEANTIME * had Galaor grown large-limbed and strong of body, and he read books which the old man gave him, discoursing of the old deeds which knights in arms had wrought, so that by this, as well as by nature, he became desirous to be knighted, nevertheless he knew not whether by right such honour appertained to him. Very earnestly he questioned thereon with the hermit ; but he who knew that so soon as the Child received the order he should combat against the giant Albadan, would say to him in tears, My son, better were it for you to chuse some other way safer for your soul. Father, replied Galaor, badly should I follow that which I took against my will ; and in this which I have chosen, by God's good pleasure I will advance his service ; but without it I care not to live. The good man, who saw his grounded resolution, replied, Certes, if you fail not for yourself, you will not for your lineage, for you are son of a king and queen ; but let not the

* This first paragraph is transposed from the middle of Chapter 6.

giant know that I told ye this. And fearing lest Galaor should privately depart, he sent to tell the giant that his scholar was now of fit age and eager to be knighted. Forthwith the giant rode to the hermitage, and finding Galaor very comely and strong above his years, he said to him, I understand, son, that you are desirous to be knighted ; come with me, and I will see that it shall be done greatly to your honour. But before he departed, Galaor knelt before the hermit, and begged that he would remember him. The good man wept, and kissed him many times, and gave him his blessing. So he rode to the giant's castle who gave him arms to his measure, and made him ride and throw the cane, and appointed him two masters to practise him with the sword and shield, and to teach him all things convenient for a knight, so that in a year's space he was grown marvellous perfect.

When the year was compleat, Galaor said to the giant, Now, father, let me be made a knight ! and he who saw that it was time, enquired of him by whom he chose to be knighted. By King Lisuarte, said he, of whom the fame runs. The giant was well pleased, and on the third day, having prepared all things, they departed. In two days they came near a strong castle, which was by a salt water. The castle was called Bradoyd, and it was the goodliest in all that land. It stood upon a rock ; on one side was the water, and on the other a marsh, and from the side of the water it was not possible to enter without a bark ; but, across the marsh there was a causey, being so broad that two cars might pass each other, and at the entrance of the causey was a draw-bridge, and the water under it was very deep. Facing the *bridge* there grew two goodly elms, whereunder the

giant and Galaor saw two damsels and a squire, and a knight mounted on a white courser, and bearing lions in his shield, who, because he could pass no further, called with a loud voice to those of the castle. Then Galaor said to the giant, Let us see what the knight will do.

Anon there came from the castle two armed knights and ten fellows on foot, who came and demanded of the knight what he would? I would enter in, quoth he. That, said the other, cannot be, unless you first combat with us.—Then lower the bridge, and come on! This presently they did, and he who was first, ran fiercely against the knight, who sent him man and horse to the ground. He met the second on the bridge; their lances failed in the attaint, and they encountered so rudely with their bodies, that the knight of the castle fell into the water and was drowned. Then the conquerors past on towards the castle, and the villains drew up the bridge after him. At this the damsels cried aloud to him, and he turned; but there came against him three knights, well armed, who said to him, In an evil hour camest thou here, for thou shalt die in this water, as he has done who was better than thee. All three then ran at him, and smote him so firmly that his horse knelt and was like to fall, and their lances broke, and by two of them he was wounded; nevertheless, one of them he met in such order that the lance entered at one side, and came out at the other beyond the iron. This done, he drew his sword, and addressed himself to the other twain, and seeing it was for death manfully he bestirred himself, and smote off the right arm of one, who galloped away, and cried out, Help, help, they are killing our lord! When he of the lions heard that

he with whom he must yet deal was the lord of the castle, he delivered him such a rigorous blow on the helmet that he lost his stirrups, and staggered and fell upon the horse's neck. The knight then seized his helmet and plucked it off, and got between him and the castle lest he should escape like the other, and cried, Yield thyself or thou art dead. Mercy, quoth he, good knight, and I am your prisoner! But he of the lions, who now saw knights and villains coming from the castle to succour their lord, held him by the shield, and placing the sword to his face, bade him to command his men to return, and make the bridge be lowered: which when he had done he crossed the bridge, taking his prisoner with him. when the knight of the castle saw the damsels, he knew that one of them was Urganda the unknown; and cried out, Ah! Sir knight, if you save me not from that damsel I am but dead! As God shall help me, he replied, that shall I not do, but do with you what she commands. Then calling to Urganda, he said, Here is the lord of the castle, what would ye that I do unto him? Smite off his head, quoth she, if he will not release my friend whom he keepeth in prison, and put the damsel in my power for whom he is detained. He besure made no delay to send for them, and when they came, he of the lions said to the knight, There is your lady and great cause you have to love her for the pains she hath taken to deliver you from thralldom, and I do love her, quoth he, more than ever! and then Urganda embraced him. Afterwards the conqueror asked what should be done with the damsel? She shall die, said Urganda, I have long borne with her; and then she made a spell, so that the damsel ran all trembling to throw herself into the

water. Lady, cried the knight of the lions, let her not die for the love of God, since by me she was taken. For your sake then I forgive her, but let her take heed how she again offend me. Hearing that the lord of the castle took heart, and said, Sir knight, I have performed with what hath been commanded, I beseech you to deliver me from Urganda. I release you, replied Urganda herself, for his sake. The knight of the lions then asked the damsel why she was going to throw herself into the water. Sir, quoth she, it seemed that there were lighted torches burning me on all sides, and I ran to save myself in the water. Thereat he smiled. Certes damsel, your folly is overgreat to provoke her who can so well avenge herself.

Galaor seeing all this said to the giant, I will be knighted by him, for if King Lisuarte is so renowned, it is for his greatness, but his knight deserves to be so for his great hardihood. Go then and ask him, said the giant, and if he will not do it, it will be to his own harm. Then Galaor took with him four squires and two damsels, and went towards the knight of the lions, who was sitting under the elms, and saluted him and said, Sir knight, grant me a boon. He who thought him the goodliest person he had ever seen, took him by the hand and said, Let it be lawful and I grant it.—Then I beg you of your courtesy make me a knight, and you will spare me the journey to King Lisuarte. Great wrong should you do yourself, replied he of the lions, to leave receiving that honour from the best king in the world, and take it from a poor knight like me. Sir, quoth Galaor, the greatness of King Lisuarte can put no courage in me like that which I have seen you do ; therefore, so please you, *fulfil your promise*.—Gentle squire, I shall be better

content to grant anything than this which befits not me, and is to you little honour. At this time Urganda came up as one who had heard nothing of their talk, and asked him what he thought of the Child.—Truly a fairer have I never seen ; but he asks a thing of me neither for himself nor me convenient ; and then he related what had passed. Certes, said Urganda, I advise him to insist upon the promise, and you to fulfil it ; and I tell you that knighthood will be better employed in him than in any other in all the Isles of the Sea, except only one. Since it is so, said the knight, in God's name let us go to some church to perform the vigil. It is not necessary, answered Galaor, for I have this day heard mass, and seen the real body of God. It sufficeth then, said he of the lions, and having fastened on his spur, he kissed him, and said, now are you a knight, and may receive the sword from whom it pleaseth you. That, said Galaor, must be only from you ; and he called a squire to bring the sword which was ready. Not that, then cried Urganda, but this which hangs in a tree. They all looked up, and saw nothing. She laughed thereat ;—Ten years hath it hung there, and no passenger ever saw it, and now it shall be seen by all ! They looked again, and there hung the sword from a bough, a fair sword and fresh, as if it were just hung there, and the scabbard was richly wrought with silk and gold. He of the lions took it down, and girding it on Galaor said, So fair a sword beseemeth so fair a knight, and whoso has kept it there for you so long, bears you besure no ill will. Then was Galaor well contented ; Sir, quoth he, I must needs go to a place whence I cannot be excused ; but I desire your company above that of any other in the world, and if it please you tell me where I may find

you?—At the house of King Lisuarte, where I hope to win honour, and where it is right that you should go for the same cause. At this was Galaor right joyful, and turning to Urganda he said, Damsel, my lady, I thank you for this sword which you have given, and I pray you account me for your knight. Then taking leave he returned to the giant, who had remained concealed under the river-bank.

This while had one of Galaor's damsels learnt from the damsel of Urganda that the knight of the lions was Amadis, whom Urganda had brought thither to deliver her friend by force of arms; for her skill availed not, because the lady of the castle, who was learned in the same art, had first enchanted him. The damsel who had beguiled him there was the lady's niece, and she it was who had been about to drown herself.

After Galaor was departed, Urganda demanded of Amadis if he knew to whom he had given the order of knighthood. No, said he. There is great reason that you should know him, quoth she, for he is of like heart with yourself, and if ever ye should encounter without knowledge of each other, it would be great unhappiness. He is your own brother, whom the giant took away in childhood, and for your sake and his I have so long kept the sword for him, wherewith he shall make the best beginning of chivalry that ever did knight yet in Great Britain. Then came tears of joy over the eyes of Amadis,—Ah, lady, tell me where I shall find him!—You need not seek him now, he must go where it is ordained.—Shall I see him soon? Yes; but he will not be as easily known as you imagine. So she and her friend departed, and Amadis and Gandalin took the way to Windsor.

When Galaor returned to the giant, he cried out to him, Father, I am a knight ! thanks to God and the good knight who has made me ! Thereof am I right glad, quoth he, and now grant me a boon.—With a good will, so be that you withhold me not from seeking honour.—By God's good pleasure it shall be to the advancement of your honour. Son, you have heard me tell how Albadan the Giant slew my father by treason, and took the rock of Galtares, which should be mine. I demand of you to right me, for none but you can do it : remember how I have brought you up, and that I would give my body to death for your sake. This, said Galaor, is what I ought to ask, not you ; for, while life lasts, I am ready to do whatever is to your profit and honour : let us go there ! In the name of God, said the giant. So as they rode toward the rock of Galtares they met Urganda, and courteously saluted. Know you, said she, who knighted you ? Yes, quoth he, the best knight in the world.—That is true, and he is yet better than you think ; but you must know who he is. She then said to the Giant, Gandalac, dost thou not know that this knight whom thou hast nourished is the son of King Perion and Queen Elisena, whom because of my words you carried away ? The giant answered that it was true. Know then, my son, said she, that he who made thee knight is thine own brother, and elder than thee by two years : honour him as the best knight in the world, and strive to imitate him in all hardihood and goodness. Is all this true ? said Galaor, then is my life in the greater danger, since it becomes me now to be like him. Of a certainty it is true, said Urganda ; and with that she went her way.

As they rode on, the giant told Galaor that the

damsel with whom they spake was Urganda. In this discourse they came to a river side, where by reason of heat they erected their tent ; they had not been there long before they saw two damsels coming by different ways who met before the tent. So soon as they espied the giant they would have fled, but Galaor went out and courteously caused them to return, and asked them whither they travelled. I go, quoth one of them, by command of my mistress, to see a strange battle which one only knight hath undertaken against the mighty giant of the rock of Galtares, to the end that I may bring her true tidings thereof. When the other damsel heard her, she replied, I marvel that any knight dare venture with such folly, and, though my road lie otherwise, yet will I go with you and see a thing so out of reason. Hereupon they would have left Galaor, but he said to them, make no haste, fair damsels, for we are going to this battle, and will bear ye company. They lightly consented, and took great pleasure to behold him how fair he was in that dress of a new knight. So they all ate together, and made good cheer, and Galaor took the giant apart, and requested that he would remain where he was till the battle was over : this he did that the damsels might not suspect it was he who was to do the battle ; whereto Gandalac, though unwillingly, accorded. So Galaor proceeded with the damsels and three squires, whom the giant sent to carry his armour and what else was needful. So far they went that they arrived within two leagues of the rock of Galtares, and there passed the night in the dwelling of a hermit, to whom, because he was ordained, Galaor confessed. But when he revealed that he came for that combat, the good hermit was greatly astonished, and asked who had

advised him to such madness:—There are not any ten such knights in all the country who would encounter him, so fierce and terrible is he, and without mercy ; and you who are so young would adventure yourself to the loss of body and soul, for such as wilfully seek the death which they might avoid, are very self-murderers. Father, said Galaor, God will do his will with me, but I shall not forego the battle. Then the good man began to lament—God help thee and strengthen thee, quoth he, since thou art so obstinate ; but I am glad to find thy life has been so good. Good father, said Galaor, remember me in your prayers.

The next morning after mass, Galaor armed himself, and rode to the rock which he saw before him : it was very lofty and with many towers, so that the castle was so goodly that it was a wonder to behold. The damsel asked Galaor if he knew the knight who should perform the combat. I think I have seen him, said he ; and then he asked the damsel who her lady was that had sent her to see the battle. That, quoth she, must be told to none but the knight himself. By this time they had reached the castle, and found the gate shut. Galaor called, and two men then appeared over the gate, to whom he said, tell the giant that here is a knight who comes from Gandalac to defy him, and if he will not come out, there shall no man either enter or leave the castle. The men mocked at him : this heat will soon cool ; thou wilt either fly or lose thy head ; and they went to the giant. But when the damsels heard that Galaor himself was the champion, they prayed God to help him ; and said they durst not abide to see the giant. Fair friends, said he, stay and see that for which ye are come, or else return to the hermitage, and if I live I will join ye there. Then

they took courage, and retiring from the castle stood at the edge of a forest, thinking to escape there if the knight should not speed well.

CHAP. XIII.—How Don Galaor fought the Giant of the Rock of Galtares and conquered him.

THE news went to the giant, and presently he came out on horseback ; and he appeared so huge upon the horse that not a man in the world would dare look at him ; he had on plates of iron, so long that they covered him from the throat to the saddle, and a large and bright helmet, and an iron mace in his hand. Greatly afraid were the squires and damsels to behold him, and Galaor was not so hardy but that then he had great fear, but the nearer he came the less he feared. Wretch ! said the giant, he who sent thee shall never see thee again ; look, and see how a mace is used ! and he came on like a tower. Devil ! quoth Galaor, thou shalt be conquered and killed with what I bring on my side, which is God and the right ; and he ran at him so fiercely that his lance broke, and the giant lost one of his stirrups. He on his part had lifted up his mace to strike Galaor on the head, but the knight past so rapidly that it only struck the rim of his shield, and burst all the arm and neck-fastenings, so that it fell, and Galaor had well nigh fallen also : this did not break the blow, nor could the giant recover the mace, which came upon the head of his own horse and smote him down, so that he himself fell. Galaor twice rode over the giant before he could rise ; but then his own horse stumbled over the giant's, and he fell on the other side. *The knight seeing himself in the chance of death, rose*

presently and drew the sword which Urganda had given him, and met the giant, who had now taken his mace from the ground, and struck it on the wooden stock that he severed it ; but with the piece that was left the giant gave him such a blow on the helmet as made him set one hand to the ground, and twisted the helmet on his head ; but he who was nimble and of good heart, rose presently, and turned to the giant, and avoided his next blow, and gave a stroke at him with so full force that it cut away the arm clean from the shoulder, and passing down wounded him in the leg. The giant roared aloud, Ah wretch ! am I destroyed by one man ? and he caught at Galaor, but his wounded limb failed him ; then he sat down, and with his remaining hand sought to seize the knight, but Galaor cut that hand through, and sprung upon him, for in out-reaching he had fallen along, and smote off his head. The squires and damsels then came up, and Galaor sent the squires with the head to Gandalac.

With that there came through the gate ten knights chained together, who bade him come and take possession of the castle, seeing that he had slain the giant and delivered them. What think you, damsels, said Galaor, shall we sojourn here to-night ? They assented thereto, and he freed the knights from their chain, and so went they all into the castle, where were many goodly houses ; and there they feasted and refreshed themselves.

The next day the people of the land came to do him homage, but he took their homage for Gandalac to whom of right it belonged, and right joyful were they hearing that their natural lord should return, for *they* had long been hardly ruled, and like foreign

subjects. This done, Galaor and the damsels, and one squire who continued with him, took the way to the hermitage, and there the knight received the good man's blessing. The one damsel then said, she would pursue her journey to King Lisuarte's court, whither she was going to see a knight, her brother. Damsel, then said Galaor, if you see there a knight bearing two lions in his shield, say the child whom he made knight commends himself to him, and that I shall strive to be a good man, and that if we meet I shall tell him more concerning both me and himself than he yet knows. And when she was gone, Galaor asked the other who her lady was that sent her to see the battle? If you would know that, said she, follow me, and in five days you shall see. That shall not let me, quoth he. So they went on together.

At length they came to a forked way, and Galaor, who rode before, thought that the damsel followed him, but she had taken the other: this was at the entrance of the forest called Brananda, which separates the counties Clara and Gresca. It was not long before he heard a voice cry, Help me! help me! He turned, and the squire said he thought it was the damsel who had left them. How! left us? I have badly looked to her, quoth he, and he took shield and lance and galloped towards the sound. Hard at hand he espied six villains, armed with morions and battle-axes, and a hideous dwarf on horseback, who cruelly laid on the damsel with a staff. Thou wicked and ugly thing, quoth the knight, God send thee bad luck! and passing the lance to his left hand, he seized the staff, and therewith smote him to the ground and stunned him. The villains then attacked him on all sides, but to the first he gave such a greeting with the

staff that he lay sprangling on the earth ; another, who had fixed his battle-axe in his shield and could not pluck it out again, he smote through with the lance, and left the lance, and made at the others with the battle-axe which he plucked from his own shield ; but they durst not now abide him, and fled into the thick underwood where he could not follow. By this the dwarf had got again on horseback, and calling out to Galaor, in an evil hour hast thou killed my men ! he galloped away. Then Galaor drew his lance from the body of the villain, and saw that it was sound, which pleased him ; and he gave his arms to the squire, and said, Damsel, go you before me, and I will guard you better than I have done.

So took they again the way they had left, and it soon brought them to the river Bran, which could not be passed without a boat. Now rode the damsel somewhat far before Galaor, and finding the boat ready she crossed before him. While he waited for the boat's return, the dwarf came and cried, By my faith, Sir Traitor, thou shalt die, and leave the damsel ! and Galaor saw that there came with him three knights well armed and mounted. What ! quoth the one, shall we all agree to set upon a single enemy ? I want no help ! and he ran with a full course against Galaor, who was ready to entertain him, they encountered in such sort, that the knight pierced Galaor's armour, making him feel the naked point of his lance, and Galaor bade him bravely welcome, and cast him from the saddle. Whereat the other twain admiring, ran both against him, the one failing and the other breaking his lance. Galaor smote off the helmet of the one ; the other turned and struck at his breast and broke his lance ; but though Galaor felt the blow

sorely, it wounded him not. Then they all laid hand to sword and began battle, the dwarf crying out, kill his horse that he may not escape! Galaor aimed a blow at him whom he had unhelmed, he raised up his shield, and the sword cut through the rim of the shield, and the point came on his head and cleaved it to the jaws; and when the other knight saw that stroke, he turned his horse and away. Galaor followed, and made a blow at him, which fell short upon the saddle, and cut away many plates of his armour; and he then in more fear, spurred his horse and threw his shield from his neck, and galloped so fast that Galaor would follow him no longer. Galaor would then have caught the dwarf to have tied him by the leg, but that little wretch had ridden off betimes. Hereupon he came to the first whom he had dismounted, who had now somewhat recovered: I am more sorry for you, sir knight, said he, than for your comrades, for you attacked me in knightly guise, though I know not wherefore. It is true, replied he, but that dwarf told us that you had beaten him and slain his men, and taken from him a damsel against her will. Galaor then shewed him the damsel waiting for him on the other side of the river. You see her, said he, and if she were with me against her will she would not wait there. Then relating how the truth was, he gave the knight his horse; and, bidding him torment the dwarf for his villainy, he took leave of him.

Then Galaor crossed at the ferry, and proceeded under the damsel's guidage. Between nones* and vespers she showed him a fair castle that stood above a valley, and said to him, there we shall go to rest;

* Three in the afternoon.

and they were well received; it being the dwelling of the damsel's mother, whom she bade honour her guest as the best knight that ever hung shield from his neck. Then said she to Galaor, Good knight, you must wait awhile for me here, that I may perform what I have promised ; I shall soon return. So she went, and without long tarrying returned, and told him to mount and come with her. In God's name, quoth he, and he took his arms, and mounted and followed her. They rode through a forest, and when the night was advanced came to a city called Grandares, and at the castle the damsel told him to alight and follow her, and there she would tell him what she had promised. Shall I take my arms ? said he. Yes, she replied, for man knows not what may happen to him. He followed her to a wall ; she told him to get over, and she would go round and meet him. Galaor with some difficulty got up, by reason of his arms, and let himself carefully down into a garden, where presently the damsel came, and another with her. Sir knight, said she, before you enter you must tell me whose son you are. Let that alone, quoth Galaor, for I am of such parents that till I am of more renown I dare not name them.—You must tell me, and it shall not be to your harm.—Know then, I am son to King Perion and Queen Elisena, and I could not have told you that seven days past. Come in, the damsel then said ; and having entered they disarmed him, and threw a mantle over him, the one went before and the other behind him, and so they passed thro' the palace, where were many dames and damsels in bed, and when any one asked who was there, the two damsels answered. Thus they went on till they came into a chamber, and there Galaor saw a beautiful damsel on a rich bed

combing her goodly locks ; and when she saw him, she put a fair garland on her head and went to him ; You are very welcome, sir, being the best knight that I know ; And you, lady, said he, are very well-found, being the fairest lady that ever I saw. Then said the damsel who had guided him, Here, sir, is my mistress, and I have fulfilled my promise ; her name is Aldeva, the daughter of the King of Serolis, and she has been brought up here by her aunt, wife to the Duke of Bristol. Then turning to her lady, I give you the son of King Perion of Gaul ; you are both children of kings, and both fair persons : if ye should love each other no one can blame ye. And with that the damsels left them together, and nothing more shall be here related, for these and such like things which are neither conformable to good conscience nor virtue, man ought in reason lightly to pass over, holding them in as little estimation as they deserve.


The hour being come when it behoved him to depart, the damsels conducted him to the place where overnight he had left his arms : and being armed he went again into the garden, and there he found the dwarf, who cried out, In an ill hour didst thou enter here, for now thou shalt die and the wretch that led thee here ! Then he called out aloud, come out, knights, come out, for here is a man Come out of the duke's chamber ! Galaor lightly got over the wall, and mounted his horse, but the dwarf and his people speedily came out upon him ; and when Galaor saw himself so beset, he said within himself, let me die if I be not revenged upon that villainous dwarf ! but he kept behind upon his horse, and the rest compassed the knight on all sides. Galaor laid manfully about him, and slew two before he broke his lance ; then

fell on them with his sword, and made them so soundly acquainted with its sharp edge, that he who thought himself hardiest was glad to give way ; but before he could cut his road through they killed his horse, and when the dwarf saw him on foot he attempted to ride over him. Galaor stept aside and caught his bridle, and gave him such a blow on the breast with his sword-hilt that he fell off, and the blood gushed out of his ears and nose ; then he leapt upon his horse, but in springing up he dropt the reins, and the horse rode off some distance before he could recover them ; he would then have turned back to revenge himself, but he saw his lady shaking a handkerchief from a tower window in token that he should depart, and so he rode into the forest.

There were some who were of opinion that they should follow him, but others said it was in vain seeing that he had gotten into the wood ; and they were all astonished at what they had done. The dwarf now recovering, cried out, Carry me to the duke, and I will tell him on whom to take vengeance. They took him in their arms, and he told the duke how he found the damsel in the forest, and wished to bring her back, and all that had followed. The duke then asked him if he knew the damsel, which she was ? And all the damsels in the palace were called before him, and as soon as the dwarf beheld her, he said, this is she by whom your palace is dishonoured. Ah, traitor ! quoth she, you were beating me in the forest, and that good knight defended me ! but the duke was greatly incensed, and said he would force her to confess the truth, and he put her in prison ; yet neither evils nor torments made her discover any thing, and there she remained in prison, to the great grief of Aldeva who

dearly loved her, and knew not by whom to send tidings to her friend Galaor.

CHAP. XIV.—How Amadis came to the castle of Dardan the Proud, and of the words which he had with him, and of the battle which he had with him in the court of King Lisuarte.

MADIS, after he had left Urganda, rode on through the forest till he was benighted. After some time he saw a light above the trees, and rode toward it thinking to find a lodging. He came at length to a goodly fortress wherein were the lights that he had seen, which were from the window of a tower, and he heard the voices of men and women singing and making mirth. He called at the gate, but they heard him not; at last those in the tower saw him through the battlements, and a knight asked who was there?—A strange knight.—So it seems, quoth he, you must be a strange knight to go about in the dark; I believe it is for fear lest you should be obliged to do battle with us by day-light, and now you can meet none but the devils. Amadis answered, If you were good for any thing you would know that many are benighted who cannot help it. Be gone! quoth the knight, you shall not enter here. As God shall help me, said Amadis, I think thou hast no man of valour in thy company! tell me thy name before we part.—That shall I do on condition that whensoever we meet thou wilt fight me. To that Amadis, who was in wrath, readily assented.—Know then that my name is Dardan, and badly as thou wilt fare this night, thou wilt fare much worse the day that I shall meet thee! Come out, quoth Amadis, *and let them light us by those torches to do battle!*

What ! said Dardan, arm myself at this hour to fight with thee ? ill fall the knight who should put on his spurs and harness for such an enemy ! and with that he went in.

Amadis proceeded through the forest, seeking some bush under which he might shelter himself. Presently he heard voices, and proceeding faster he came up to two damsels on their palfreys, attended by a squire. They saluted courteously, and Amadis recounted his adventure. Know you the knight's name ? said they. —He told me it was Dardan.—True ! he is called Dardan the Proud, the haughtiest knight in this country : but, sir, seeing that you are so unprovided of lodging, will you abide this night in our tents which are pitched near at hand ? He, glad of their courtesy, rode with them ; and having there alighted he unarmed, and when the damsels saw how fair he was they delighted to see him. So they supped cheerfully together, and a tent was spread for him wherein he should sleep. Meantime they asked him whither he was bound ?—To the court of King Lisuarte.—And we are going there also ; to see what will happen to a lady, one of the best and noblest in the land : all that she hath in the world is put upon the issue of a combat, which is to be performed within ten days before King Lisuarte ; but we know not who will appear to defend her, for he against whom her champion must fight is the best knight in Great Britain, that very Dardan the Proud, whom you so lately left. And on what cause, said Amadis, ariseth the combat ?—This Dardan loveth the daughter of a knight, who at his second nuptials, married the lady I speak of. Now hath this damsel conceived such hatred against her stepmother, that she hath vowed never to love Dardan

unless he bring her to King Lisuarte's court, and affirm that all her step-mother's goods appertain to her, and maintain it by battle against whomsoever dare gainsay ; and the dame, who was not well advised, said she would produce a champion, and this she did for her manifest right, thinking that one would be found to combat for her ; but Dardan is so good a knight in arms, that be it for right or wrong all fear him. These tidings rejoiced Amadis, for the knight was against all pride, and now might he indulge his own anger in a just cause, and that in the presence of Oriana. I pray ye, sir, said one of the damsels, for courtesy acquaint us with the reason of your sudden musing.—Willingly, if you will promise me, as loyal damsels, not to reveal it, I mean, quoth he, to combat for the lady. Gentle sir, that thought proceedeth from a high resolved mind : God grant it a good issue ! So gave they each to other the good night, and went to rest.

In the morning the damsels intreated that he would not leave them, seeing they were bound to one place, and that in the forest kept men of evil behaviour. They rode along with sundry discoursings, and among other talk they asked the knight, since God had placed them in company, that he would tell them his name ; the which he did, but charged them to let none know it. So they proceeded through unfrequented ways, lodging in their tents, and regaling on the food they took with them. At length they saw two knights under a tree, armed and on horseback, who seeing them placed themselves in the way, the one saying to his companion, which of these damsels will you have ? This ! quoth he, and seized the one, as *his comrade* did the other. What, sirs ! quoth

Amadis, what manner of behaviour is this? what would ye do with the damsels?—Make them our mistresses! So lightly think ye to win them? said he, and took his helm and shield and lance;—now release them! The one knight met him bravely, and broke his lance; but Amadis gave him such an attain that he lay with his heels upwards. The second came on, and pierced through his arms, and slightly wounded Amadis. He on his part failed with his lance, but shields and horses met, and Amadis seized him and plucked him from the saddle, and dashed him down, and then rode on* with the damsels.

When at length they came near Windsor, Amadis said, fair friends, I would remain in secret here till such time as the knight come to the combat, and, when the hour is, let your squire bring me hither tidings thereof. Sir, quoth the damsel, if it please you we will remain with you; so they pitched their tents apart from the road, by the river-side. Meanwhile Amadis went upon a little eminence to look at the town, and there he sate under a tree, and looked toward the towers and the high walls, and he said in his heart, ah, God! the flower of the world is there! and thou city containest now the lady that hath no peer for goodness and beauty; and who is more loved than all others that are loved, and that would I prove upon the best knight in the world. And in these thoughts the tears trilled down his cheeks, and he sat heedless of every thing about him. But Gandalin, who saw a troop of knights and ladies coming up, called to him, and asked if he did not see that company? he neither heard nor answered. With that

* A sword combat with the same knights, who followed to revenge themselves, is omitted.

Gandalin took him by the arm,—So help me God, sir, you afflict yourself more than need is ; take courage as you do in other things ! Ah, Gandalin, quoth he, you had better counsel me to die, than to endure this hopeless sorrow ! Then could not the squire refrain from lamenting.—This excessive love is a great misfortune ; as God shall help me, I do not think that there is any one, how good and beautiful soever she may be, who can equal your worth, or whom you might not have. At this was Amadis greatly enraged : Go, idiot ! said he, how dare you talk so madly ? if ever you again repeat such thoughts, you shall go no farther with me. Dry your eyes, said Gandalin, and let not them who are coming see you thus ! It was the lady coming to her trial, weeping and lamenting as she went, for there was none to defend her right.

On the day of the trial the damsels rose at dawn, and told Amadis that they would go before to the town, and send him word when it was time to appear. He rode with them to the edge of the forest, and there awaited. By this it was sunrise, and King Lisuarte with a goodly company went out to the field which was between the city and the forest ; and there came Dardan, well armed and on a fair courser, leading the bridle of his lady, who was as richly adorned as she could be ; and thus they stopped before King Lisuarte. And Dardan said, Sir, command that this lady have that which is her own delivered to her ; or, if there be a knight to gainsay it, I am ready to combat him. Lisuarte then called the dame, and asked her if she was provided with a champion. She answered, No ; and wept ; and the king greatly pitied her, for she was a virtuous lady. So Dardan entered the lists, to remain there till the hour of tierce ; by which time

if no champion appeared, the king was to pronounce judgment in his favour, according to the custom. Then one of the damsels hastened to call Amadis, and he took his arms and told the damsels and Gandalin that if he sped well he would return to them in the tents, and with that he rode on, on his white courser. When the king saw the knight approach, how firmly he rode and his arms how fair they were and his horse how goodly a one, he marvelled who he might be, and asked the dame, who was brought to trial, if she knew the knight who came to defend her cause. I never saw him before, quoth she, nor know I who he is. By this, Amadis entered the lists and rode up to his enemy,—Dardan, defend your lady's cause, as I shall maintain and acquit the promise which I made thee ! And what didst thou promise me ? quoth Dardan.—To fight thee, and that was when thou toldest me thy name, and hadst dealt with me villainously. I make the less account of thee now, said Dardan ; And I, said Amadis, care less for thy words, for I am about to have vengeance. Let the dame then, replied Dardan, accept thee for her champion, and avenge thyself if thou canst. The king then came up ; the dame was asked if she would admit that knight for her defender. She replied, Yes, and God reward him ! Lisuarte saw that the shield of Amadis was pierced in many places, and that the rim had many sword cuts, and he said, if the knight demanded another shield, he could lawfully give him one ; but Amadis was in no temper for delay, for he remembered the insults he had received. They ran their course, both lances pierced through shield and armour and shivered, but without wounding ; their horses and shields met, and Dardan was *thrown*, but he held the rein fast, and sprung readily

upon the horse again, and drew his sword, and they attacked each other so fiercely that all who beheld them were astonished. The town's people were on the towers and on the wall and wherever else they could see the combat, and the windows of the queen's palace, which were above the wall, were full of dames and damsels, all marvelling at the valour of the combatants, for the fire flew from their helmets as if they were all ablaze, and plates and splinters fell on all sides from their shields and mail, and neither a whit abated of his courage. King Lisuarte had been himself in many a hard conflict and seen many a one, but all appeared nothing to this. This is the bravest combat, said he, that ever man hath seen, and I will have the conqueror's image placed over my palace gate, that all who are desirous to gain honour may behold it.

But before the hour of tierce it was evident that Dardan's force failed, though Amadis was nothing abated of his strength, only his horse was faint, and Dardan's also stumbled, and he, thinking to have the advantage on foot, said to Amadis, Knight, our horses fail us for fatigue : if we were on foot I should soon conquer thee. This he said so loud that the king and all with him could hear ; and Amadis, somewhat ashamed at the threat, answered, Alight then ! though a knight should never leave his horse while he can sit on it. Then alighting they both took what of their shields remained, and assailed each other more fiercely than before ; but Amadis now preste on him, and Dardan retreated and staggered, and sometimes bent his knees, so that all the beholders said he had committed a great folly in proposing to fight on foot ; and he still giving back from the sword of Amadis, came under the queen's window, and there was a cry there, "Holy

Mary, Dardan is slain!" and Amadis heard among them the voice of the damsel of Denmark. Then he looked up, and saw his lady Oriana at the window, and the damsel by her: that sight so overcame him that the sword hung loose in his hand, and he continued looking up regardless of his situation. Dardan, recovering by this respite, noticed his confusion and took heart again; and, lifting the sword with both hands, smote him on the helmet so that it was twisted on his head. Amadis did not return the blow, he only placed his helmet right again, and with that Dardan laid on him at all parts, and he feebly defended himself, and Dardan's courage increased. Then cried the damsel of Denmark, In an ill minute did that knight look up and see one here who made him forget himself when his enemy was at the point of death! Certes such a knight ought not to fail in such a time! At these words Amadis had such shame that willingly would he have been dead lest his lady should suspect there was any cowardice in him, and he struck a blow at Dardan that brought him down; and plucked his helmet off, and held the sword to his face,—Dardan, you are dead, unless you yield the cause! Mercy, knight! quoth he, and I yield it. Then the king came up; but Amadis, for the shame of what had befallen him, would make no tarriance, but sprung to his horse, and rode the fastest that he could into the forest.

The mistress of Dardan, who saw him so rudely handled, came up to him now and said, Seek now, Dardan, some other mistress, for I will neither love thee nor any other than that good knight who overcame thee! What! said Dardan, have I been so wounded and conquered in your quarrel, and now you

forsake me for the very enemy ! God ! thou art a right woman to say this, and I will give thee thy reward ! and he took his sword, and in a moment smote her head from her body. Then, after a minute's thought, he cried, Ah, wretch ! I have slain the thing in the world that I loved best ! and he ran himself through before any one could stop his hand. In the uproar that this occasioned, none thought of following Amadis ; and though Dardan was so brave a knight, yet most who were present now rejoiced at his death, for his strength had always been unjustly and tyrannically employed.

CHAP. XV.—Of the funeral which King Lisuarte gave Dardan and his Mistress, and what Amadis did meanwhile.

KING LISUARTE then commanded two monuments to be placed upon lions of stone there, in the place where the battle was fought, and Dardan and his mistress were interred therein, and their names were inscribed on the monument, and all that had chanced ; and afterwards, when the king knew the name of the conqueror, that also was written there.

But now the rumour being appeased, Lisuarte asked where was the stranger ? none could give tidings of him, save only that he had ridden full speed toward the forest. Well were he, quoth the king, who should have such a man in his company, for, strong as he is, he is right gentle ; ye all heard the insolence of Dardan, yet would he not slay him when he was in his power, though Dardan would have shewn no *mercy if the conquest had been his.* Amadis, mean-

time, had entered the forest ; it was late when he reached the tents, where he found Gandalin and the damsels who had made their meal ready ; and when the cloths were removed, he took Gandalin apart, and bade him go to the town and secretly speak with the damsel of Denmark, and learn from her how he should proceed. Gandalin, that he might go more privately, went on foot, and entering the town, made toward the palace, where he had not awaited long when he saw the damsel, who was watchful for him. Follow me, said she, and if you are questioned, say you bring a message from the Queen of Scotland to Oriana, and that you are come to join Amadis in this country, for so shall you appear in his company without suspicion. They then entered the queen's palace, where Oriana then was, to whom the damsel came, and speaking somewhat loud, said, here is a squire sent to you from the Queen of Scotland. Oriana rejoiced thereat, but greater was her joy when she saw it was Gandalin, who knelt before her and said, Madam, the queen salutes you as one who loves and prizes you and whom your welfare will make glad. May the Queen have a fair fortune ! replied Oriana ; I thank her kindness : come with me to this window, and tell me the rest. Then they retired, and she made him sit by her, and asked him, Friend, where did you leave your master ? In the forest, whither he went after the battle. Tell me how he fareth, so may God prosper you. Even so, quoth Gandalin, as the man that is altogether yours, and dies for you, and his soul suffers so as never knight endured, and then he wept. Lady, he will not break your command for good nor for ill that may befall him ; for God's sake have compassion on him, for if he lives he will be the

best knight that ever bore arms, but good fortune failed him when he saw you, and he will die before his time ; and better had he died in the sea, where he was thrown before his parents knew him, for now they see him perish, and can give him no relief. Oriana wept, and clasping her hands and interlacing her fingers one with the other, she cried, for God's sake, Gandalin, say no more ; you blame me, because you know his feelings and do not know mine. She then showed him the garden under the window ;—go to your master, and tell him to come secretly to-night into this garden ; the chamber wherein I and Mabilia sleep is underneath this, and it has a grated window near the ground, there can we speak to each other, for Mabilia knows my heart ; and she took a ring from her finger, and bade him give it to Amadis, as the jewel which she most prized. Then she called Mabilia to see the squire who brought tidings from her mother ; and Mabilia, seeing Gandalin, understood how it was.

Oriana went to the queen, who asked her when the squire would return, for she would send presents by him to the Queen of Scotland. He is come, said the princess, to seek for Amadis, son of the King of Gaul, the good knight of whom there is so much talk. He saith it is more than ten months since he heard that knight was coming here, and marvels that he finds him not. Now trust me, replied the queen, right glad would I be to see such a knight in the king my husband's company, great aid would he prove to him ; and I tell you that if he come, he shall not depart for want of any thing that he can ask and that King Lisuarte can give.

So Gandalin returned to Amadis with his tidings,

and after the hour of rest they took their arms and rode to the town. They tied their horses in a tuft of trees adjoining the garden, and entering through a way made by a watercourse, came to the window, and Gandalin called in a low voice. Oriana, who did not sleep, heard him and rose and called Mabilia, for here, said she, is your cousin. My cousin? quoth Mabilia, that indeed he is, but you have a nearer interest in him than all his lineage; then they both went to the window, and placed candles there that gave a great light, and opened it. By that light Amadis saw his lady, and she appeared more beautiful than man could fancy woman could be. She had on a robe of Indian silk, thickly wrought with flowers of gold; her hair was so beautiful that it was a wonder, and she had covered it only with a garland. Amadis trembled all over with the great delight of seeing her; there they conversed till daybreak, and Oriana bade him remain with her father if he should intreat him, and at dawn Amadis returned to the tents.

When it was morning, Amadis sent Gandalin into the town, and he remained in the tent with one of the damsels, for the other had gone to the town. Soon she returned in haste upon her palfrey, weeping aloud. Sir knight, said she, the lady for whom you did battle is detained by the king, who will not let her depart till her champion appears. He is wrath with her, thinking that she has concealed you, and he has sent to seek you in all parts. Tell her, said Amadis, that if the king will demand of me nothing against my will, I will appear before him to-morrow at the hour of tierce. With this bidding she returned. The news spread thro' the palace and the town, and all greatly rejoiced that they should see the good knight who had subdued Dardan.

CHAP. XVI.—How Amadis made himself known to King Lisuarte, and the other knights of his court.

THAT day Amadis made cheer with the damsels ; the next morning they rode with him to the apartment of the dame their cousin, who seeing her champion, knelt to him and said, Sir, all that I possess you have given me ! Lady, said he, let us go to the king that he may discharge you, and I may go my way. Then he took off his helm, and they all went to the palace, and there was a great cry, Here is the knight who conquered Dardan ! The king heard it and came out to him, and said, Welcome, friend ! for you have been greatly desired here ! and Amadis knelt down, and said, Sir, God give you joy ! The king took him by the hand,—So help me God you are a good knight ! That praise Amadis heard thankfully, and he asked if the dame was free, and assured Lisuarte that she knew not till now who had been her champion. And when he saw her at liberty, he requested the king's leave to depart. Ah, friend, said Lisuarte, not so soon, unless you would do me great displeasure. That God forbid ! quoth he ; I have it rather at heart to do you service, if I were worthy. Then I beseech you remain here, said the king ; whereto Amadis assented, but he made no semblance that it pleased him. So the king led him to an apartment, and all the knights of renown who were there came to disarm him, for this was the king who most honoured good knights and had the greatest number in his house. And Lisuarte gave him a robe to cover himself withal, and calling King Arban of North Wales, and the Duke of Gloucester, bade them keep company with that knight, for he was a worthy

companion for good men. He then went to the queen, and told her how he had in his house the good knight who won the battle. Know you his name? quoth she: peradventure he is the son of King Perion, for yon Squire who is talking with Mabilia came in search of him. And the king called to Gandalin, Come with me, and see if you know a knight who is in my palace. Gandalin followed him as one who knew what he should do; and as soon as he saw Amadis, he knelt to him and cried, Ah, Sir Amadis! great travail have I endured to find you. Then replied the knight, Gandalin! my good friend! right heartily art thou welcome: what news from the King of Scotland?—Good tidings, sir, of him and of all your friends. With that Lisuarte embraced him,—Now, sir, you need no longer conceal yourself, for you are that Amadis, the son of King Perion, who slew in battle the valiant King Abies of Ireland. All then approached to gaze at him the more, knowing that he had performed such feats in arms as none other could have atchieved; much honour was there done him all that day, and when night came King Arban of North Wales lodged him.

Lisuarte meantime took counsel with his wife how he might detain Amadis in his court. Sir, quoth she, it would be an evil report of so great a man as you, if such a knight should leave his house, and had not received all that he asked. He asks me nothing, said Lisuarte, for I would grant him any thing.—I will tell you how it must be: let some one ask him to remain on your part, and if he will not consent bid him come see me before he departs, and I and Oriana, and his cousin Mabilia, will entreat him, for they know him well, ever since he was a child and served them. You

say well, said Lisuarte, and doubtless he will stay ; if not, we may say of him with reason, that he hath more lack of courtesy than courage. King Arban of North Wales spoke with Amadis that night, but could obtain no hope of his stay. In the morning they heard mass with the king ; and that over, Amadis went to take leave of him. Certes, friend, said Lisuarte, I am loth at your departure, yet for the promise I made must not entreat your stay ; but the queen requests to see you before you go. Amadis went to her, and would have kissed her hand ; she made him be seated near her and conversed with him, and Mabilia came and embraced him, as though she had not seen him before. Brisena called to her daughter, Receive this knight who served you when he was a child, and shall serve you now he is a knight if he fail not in courtesy ; help me all to persuade him to what I shall ask. Sir knight, the king my husband hath wished you to remain with him, and he could not prevail ; now shall I see if women have more power than men with a knight ; I pray you remain and be my knight, and my daughter's, and theirs whom you see here ; in this shall you show your courtesy, and you will save us from the need of asking the king to give us a knight for our service, since having you we can dispense with all his. Then they all came and besought him, and Oriana made a sign with her looks that he should consent. Well, sir knight, said Brisena, what will you do ?—What can I do, lady, but remain at your command, who are the noblest queen in the world ! I am at your service, and your daughter's, and afterward at the service of all these ; but I am only yours, and if I shall ever do service to the king, it shall be as your *knight and not as his*. As such I receive you, said

the queen. Thus Amadis, by his lady's command, abode in the house of King Lisuarte.

Galaor, after he had left the Duke of Bristol's castle, where the dwarf had so annoyed him, rode on through the forest of Arnida till the hour of vespers without finding any habitation, or knowing whither he went, and at that time he met a squire on a right goodly steed. Galaor had received a bad wound from one of the three knights who assailed him by the river, and his last night's dalliance had inflamed it; so he saluted the squire and asked him where he could go to be healed? I know a place, said the squire, but such as you dare not go there.—Shall I find one there who will cure my wound?—You will find those who will give thee others.—Shew me the place!—That I may chuse.—Shew me, or I will make thee, quoth Galaor, for thou art such a villain that thou deservest all I can do to thee.—You can do nothing that shall make me please such a worthless knight. Then Galaor laid hand upon his sword;—Shew me the place, or I will take off thy head. I will shew thee, said he, where thou shalt pay for thy folly, and I shall have my revenge. Herewith he rode before, leaving the straight way. Galaor followed, and, by the time they had ridden the length of a league, they came to a fortress, seated in a pleasant valley, bravely environed about with trees; Here, quoth the squire, is the place, now let me go! Galaor answered, Go thy way, for I little like thy company. You will like what you find here less, said the squire; wherewith he turned bridle and away. Then Galaor went to the fortress, which he saw was newly edified, and at the gate he saw an armed knight on horseback, and with him five halberders, and they asked Galaor if it was he who brought their

squire there against his will? I know not, quoth he, if he be your squire, but he who led me here was the worst varlet that ever I knew. That, said the knight, may well be; but what would you have here?—Sir, I am sore wounded, and seek for one to give me help. Enter then, said the knight. Galaor went in, and then the halberders attacked him on one side and the knight on the other. He snatched an axe from one and turned to the knight and smote him, so that he had no need of a surgeon; then fell upon the halberders, and slew three of them, the other two fled into the castle, and he was following; but his squire cried out, Take your arms, sir! for I hear a great stir in the castle. This Galaor did, and the squire took shield and axe from one of the dead men, and said, Sir, I will aid you against the villains; but against a knight I must not lift hand, lest I should lose thereby all title to be knighted. If I find the good knight whom I seek, said Galaor, that shalt thou soon be. Presently they saw two other knights and ten men on foot, and they heard the squire crying from one of the windows, Kill him! kill him! but save his horse for me. When Galaor heard that, he was greatly enraged, and he fiercely ran to meet the new assailants; their lances brake, but he made him whom he encountered sure enough from ever bearing arms afterwards; then setting hand to sword advanced himself to the other, and felled him, and turned among the halberders. The squire had already slain two; Kill them all! said he, let not such traitors live! When the squire of the castle saw this, he ran up a ladder into a high tower, exclaiming, Arm yourself, sir, unless you mean to be slain! Then Galaor dismounted, because he could not ride through the portal, and went towards the tower;

but, before he reached it, there came out a knight all armed, and his horse was brought him, but Galaor caught the bridle, and said, Knight, thou shalt not mount, for I distrust thee! Is it you, quoth the knight, who have slain my nephews and my people?—I know not whom you ask for, but this I can assure ye, how I found here the most disloyal and bad-minded people that ever I dealt withal.—They whom thou hast slain were better than thou art, and dearly shalt thou pay for them. Then, afoot as they were, they began a cruel battle, for the knight of the castle was a right good knight and a strong; yet in the end he could not endure the heavy and hard blows of Galaor, and flying from him under a portal, he thought to leap from a window to the gallery, but with the weight of his arms he fell short, and falling a great depth upon stones he was dashed to pieces.

When Galaor saw this he turned away, cursing the castle and its dwellers; but then he heard a voice from one of the rooms, saying, Ah, my Lord, for mercy leave me not here! Open the door then, quoth he.—I cannot, sir, I am chained. He then placed foot against the door so strongly that it flew open, and entering he found a fair lady chained by the neck. She asked him what was become of the lord of the castle, and his company; and when she heard how they were all dead, and how they set upon Galaor who came to have his wound healed, she said, Release me and I will heal the wound. Presently he broke the chain, and she took two little boxes from a coffer, and other things for his wounds, and they departed from the castle. In the gate-way Galaor found the first knight m he had smote down, who was yet breathing and

struggling; he trampled him under his horse's feet and then rode away.

That night they lodged in a forest, in the tent of some hunters whom they found. The damsel was a fair damsel, and what passed between them is not to be written. She told him that she was the daughter of Teloys the Fleming, to whom King Lisuarte had given the county of Clara, and of a lady who was his leman; the lord of that castle had seized her because she would not accept of him for a husband. Where shall I conduct you? said Galaor, for I have far to travel.—To the monastery, where my mother dwells. So she guided Galaor there, and right gladly was he welcomed, and the more when they heard what feats of arms he had wrought; and there, at the request of the ladies of the convent, Galaor remained.

CHAP. XVII.—Of the things which happened to Agrayes after the war of Gaul.

AFTER Agrayes had returned from the war of Gaul, he prepared to cross to Norway, where was his Lady Olinda. One day, when he was hunting, he came to a high rock upon the sea-shore, and there arose a sudden storm, and he saw a ship in great peril, wherewith he being moved to pity, kindled up great fires as the night came on, that the light might direct them, and there he himself awaited to see the end. At last, by the skill of the mariners, and above all by the mercy of the true God, the ship that was so often at the point of perishing, took safe harbour. There landed from it some damsels; Agrayes sent his huntsmen to assist them, and lodged them in *his hunting-huts*. The mariners meantime took

suppers round the fires that he had kindled, and there fell asleep. The prince after some time went to the apartment where the damsels were, and coming to the door he saw them seated round a fire, and among them the fair princess, his Lady Olinda, daughter of the King of Norway. Amazed at seeing her, he exclaimed Holy Mary, help me ! the lady of my heart ! Great joy was there at that meeting, and full happily did those lovers, thus unexpectedly met, pass the night together. Six days they remained there, concealing their loves so well, that none save her damsels knew what passed. At the end of that time the weather abated. Olinda told him she was on her way to Great Britain, to live with Queen Brisena, and there Agrayes promised to follow, since he had no reason to visit Norway, and at Lisuarte's court he should find his cousin Amadis, and enjoy his lady's company. So they parted, and Olinda took ship again, and arrived safely at the *Island* of Windsor.

Now remained Agrayes on the shore giving many a long look after the ship, till having lost sight of it he returned to Briantes, where the king his father sojourned, and finding there his uncle Galvanes, who was called Lackland, he proposed to him to visit King Lisuarte's court, for there, said he, we may gain honour and fame, which cannot be done in this land. To this Galvanes willingly assented, for he had no lordship to detain him, and they took leave of Languines, and embarked with their squires and horses, and sailed prosperously till they reached the town called Bristol. There they landed, and proceeded on through a forest till they met a damsel, who enquired if that way led to the rock of Galtares. They told her no, and asked why she went thither. To seek a good knight, who

will remedy the trouble I endure. Damsel, said Agrayes, you go wrong, for at that rock you will only find the great giant Albadan, and if you take sorrow to him he will double it. But, said she, the knight whom I seek hath slain Albadan in single fight.— Certes, damsel, you tell us wonder! how, quoth Galvanes, for never knight fought singly with a giant, save only King Abies of Ireland, who fought with one, himself being armed and the giant naked, by which advantage he slew him; yet was this undertaking thought a madness: your speeches then sound not to any likelihood, for this Albadan is the fiercest giant in all the islands of the sea. Sirs, said the damsel, this knight hath slain him; and then she related how the battle had been, and that the knight's name was Don Galaor, son of the King of Gaul. Ah, damsel, quoth Agrayes, you tell me the news in the world that rejoices me most! to hear of my cousin, whom I held as rather dead than alive; but what would you have with him?—Sir, I seek his aid in behalf of a damsel who is imprisoned on his account, by the accusation of a dwarf, the most villainous creature that ever was born; and then she told him what had passed with Galaor and the dwarf, but concerning Aldeva's love she said nothing; and because the damsel will not confess what the dwarf hath avouched, the Duke of Bristol hath sworn that within ten days she shall be burnt alive; and this is a great grief to the other ladies, lest the damsel for fear of death should accuse any of them that for her sake Galaor came into the castle, and four days of the ten are now past. Agrayes answered, since it is so, you need travel no farther; guide us thither, and we will *perform what Galaor should do, if not in strength yet*

in good will. So she turned back, and they arrived at the duke's castle the day before the execution should be. The duke was then at table ; they dismounted, and entered the hall where he was, armed as they were ; and he saluted them, and bade them eat. Sir, said they, we must first declare the cause of our coming. And Don Galvanes then proceeded : Duke, you detain a damsel prisoner upon the false and wicked accusation of a dwarf. We beseech you to deliver her, because she hath no way misdones ; and if it be needful to prove her innocence let come two others to maintain his quarrel, for we are ready as her defenders. You say much ! quoth the duke, and with that called for the dwarf, and asked him what reply he would make. Sir, said he, I have a champion who will prove the truth of what I say ; and he called a knight, who was his nephew, but so strong and large of limb, that he did not look to be of the same kin, and he presented himself to do battle for the accuser. The duke rose from his meal to see the fight. I shall not, said he, determine the damsel's fate by the issue of this battle. Sir, said Agraves, you have imprisoned her upon the dwarf's accusation, and if I defeat his champion you are bound in right to acquit her. I have told you my mind, replied the duke.

Agraves, tarrying for no more words, turned his horse, running a brave career against the dwarf's knight ; they brake their staves gallantly in the encounter, meeting likewise so furiously with their bodies that they were both laid along the ground ; yet quickly they recovered, and unsheathed their swords, and delivered fierce and cruel strokes to each other ; their swords were sharp, and the knights valiant and haughtily disposed, by means whereof their armour, hel-

metes and shields were in a short time made of slender resistance. At length the dwarf's nephew gave back and said, we have combated enough, and it appears to me that neither the knight, whose cause you have undertaken, is guilty, nor yet the dwarf my uncle to blame, for otherwise the battle could not have lasted so long: if it please you, then, let them both be held as loyal. Certes, quoth the prince, the knight is a loyal knight, but the dwarf is a false dwarf and a wicked, and I will not leave you till your own mouth confess him so. The battle was then renewed, but the dwarf's nephew was now so sorely pressed, that the duke returned lest he should see his death, and said aloud as he went, Henceforth I swear to take vengeance upon all knights errant. A foolish war hast thou denounced, quoth Galvanes, against errant knights, who go about to redress wrong!

By this time his antagonist was at the feet of Agrayes, who plucked off his helmet and struck at his face with the hilt of his sword, saying, confess the disloyalty of the dwarf towards the knight. Ah, gentle knight, quoth he, do not slay me! I own that he for whom you combat is good and loyal, and I promise to gain the damsel's release; but for God's sake do not make me say that the dwarf is false, for he is my uncle and he bred me up. At these words all the assistants marvelled, and Agrayes was moved to pity. He replied, let be the dwarf! but for you, who are a good knight, I release you, provided you will do your uttermost to deliver the damsel.

While this past the duke got near the castle, but Galvanes laid hold on his bridle, and pointed where his champion lay at the prince's feet;—he is slain or conquered! what say you of the damsel?—Knight,

you are more than mad if you think I will do otherwise with her than I have resolved and sworn. —And what have you sworn?—That she shall be burnt to-morrow unless she confess for whom she introduced the knight into my palace. What! will you not deliver her? No, quoth the duke, and if you tarry longer in this land I shall find you also employment here! As he said this, certain of his attendants came up. Galvanes then let loose the bridle;—You threaten us, and you will not release the damsel as right is, therefore I defy you on my own behalf, and for all errant knights! And I defy you and all, replied the duke; in an evil hour shall any of you come here! Greatly enraged was Agraves at hearing what had passed: a man like this, quoth he, from whom no right can be obtained, should not be the lord of a land. Then he cried to the dwarf's nephew, remember what thou hast promised; and with that he and his uncle departed. It was now about vespers, and they entered the forest of Arunda. Nephew, said Galvanes, let us lie in wait here for the duke or some of his people! So they turned aside from the path into a thicket, and dismounted, and sent their squires into the town for what things were needful, and there they remained that night.

The duke meantime in great wrath sent for the damsel, and bade her look to her soul, for she should be burnt to-morrow unless she confessed; but she would disclose nothing. The dwarf's nephew then knelt down, and told the duke what he had promised to Agraves, and besought him for God's sake to release the damsel; but the duke swore he would rather lose his whole estates than break the vow he had sworn; and the knight was greatly troubled, for


he hoped to have discharged himself of his fealty. In the morning, the duke called again for the damsel ; Chuse, said he, the truth or the fire ! one or the other ! She replied, you must do your will, but against all right ! Then he commanded two knights and twelve men at arms to take charge of her, and he himself mounted his horse with only a truncheon in his hand, and went with them to burn the damsel at the forest edge ; and when they arrived and all was ready, he said, Now set fire to her, and let her die in her obstinacy ! All this Galvanes and his nephew saw, and as they were already armed they mounted, and commanded one of their squires to attend to nothing but the damsel, but to place her in safety ; and then they rode towards the smoke. But now had the damsel so great a fear, that she cried out, Sir, I will confess ! and the duke came nigh to hear her, when he saw Don Galvanes and Agrayes come galloping up, and they cried out, deliver the damsel ! His two knights were lightly dismounted, and his men at arms slain or maimed, and he himself fled full speed towards the town, and Galvanes shouted after him, Stay, sir duke, and make proof of the enemies whom you have defied !

The duke speedily armed himself and collected all his company, and sallied out to pursue them ; and coming to the forest he divided them into parties of five, and sent them different ways. He himself with his five companions had the lot to find whom he sought. Now nephew, quoth Galvanes, show your worth ! In the combat the duke encountered Agrayes ; Agrayes made a blow at him that only struck his vizor, but it went through and sheared his nose clean away ; and the duke, who thought he had been slain,

turned bridle and galloped away. The prince then turned to his uncle's assistance, and soon forced the two knights, who still kept their saddles, to make the best use of their horses in flight.

This battle won, they asked the damsel if there was any place of lodging near. Yes, said she, I know the dwelling of a knight hard by, named Olivas, a mortal enemy to the duke ; and she guided them there, where Olivas gave them the better welcome for what had happened. The morrow morning as they were about to depart, Olivas said to them, Sirs, the duke slew my cousin treacherously, and I shall accuse him for his death before King Lisuarte ; and for this I beseech your advice, and your aid as errant knights who redress wrong, if need should be. That did the knights readily promise, and Olivas accompanied them to Windsor.

CHAP. XVIII.—Of the news which Amadis had of Don Galaor his brother, and how he departed from the court of King Lisuarte to go in quest of him.

NE day when Amadis was talking with the Queen Brisena, there came a damsel into the palace, who knelt before her and said, Madam, is there a knight here who bears the lions ? The queen, perceiving that she meant Amadis, answered, what would you with him ?—I bring him tidings of a new knight, who hath made a braver beginning of chivalry than did ever knight before in all the islands. Say you so ? said Brisena ; now then tell your tale, for here is the knight whom ye seek. Then said the damsel to Amadis, Sir, the fair child whom you knighted, before the castle of Bradoya,

where you conquered the two knights of the bridge, and the three of the causey, and took the lord of the castle, and delivered by force of arms Urganda's friend, saluteth you by me, as being the man whom he reputeth his lord, and bids me say that he will strive to be a good man, or die in the attempt ; and when he shall be such in prowess, he will tell you more of his affairs than you yet know ; but if he fail to become such a one as you could esteem, he will still be silent. Then came tears into the eyes of Amadis, so that all the dames and damsels saw he was weeping, for he remembered his brother. Meanwhile the queen, desirous to hear what deeds of prowess the new knight had performed said to the damsel, I pray you continue your message, and tell us that brave beginning of chivalry you speak of. The damsel then related what she had seen at the rock of Galtares, which, when she had done, the queen asked Amadis if he knew who the knight was ! and Amadis told her it was his brother.

But Oriana, who sate too far off to hear what was said, was greatly displeased to see Amadis in tears, and she said to Mabilia, Call your cousin that we may know what hath happened ; and when he came to them, she asked him, angrily, from whom the damsel could bring him news that should draw tears ? But when he told her, she cried, Pardon me, my lord, that I suspected where there was no cause. Ah, lady, he replied, how can I pardon you who have never offended ; but if it please you, may I go and seek my brother ? And this he said because he greatly desired to see him, and because he wished to seek adventures wherein renown might be won. Oriana answered, as God shall help me, I should heartily rejoice to see that knight here, and I freely permit you to seek him ; but

let it seem as if you went at the queen's command. Amadis then went to the queen, and said, I would, lady, that we had that knight in the king's company ; yet, if he be not sought, it will be long before he will come. In God's name, replied Brisena, seek him then, but when you have found him forthwith return here.

On the morrow Amadis heard mass, and departed with only Gandalin. Towards the close of the second day, as he rode thro' a forest, he met a lady with two damsels and four esquires, and there was a litter with them, and they were all loudly lamenting. Lady, said Amadis, what have you in this litter ? I have all my care and my sorrow, said she ; a knight, my husband, who is wounded I fear to death. Then he approached the litter, and lifting a cloth that covered him beheld a goodly knight, but his face was all bruised and swoln, and it had many wounds. Sir knight, said he, from whom have you received this injury ? but the knight turned his head a little, and made no reply. The lady answered, From a knight who keeps a bridge upon this road, and who hath thus wounded him in hatred to King Lisuarte, upon whom and all his companions he hath vowed revenge for the death of Dardan. Lady, said Amadis, lend me one of your squires, to guide me to him, for since for my sake your husband has been so wronged, it behoves me to avenge him. Ah, good knight, said she, God prosper you ! So they each went their way, and Amadis rode on till he came to the bridge, and he saw the knight playing at tables with another, but quickly leaving his pastime, he mounted on horseback and rode towards Amadis, and said, Stay, sir knight, you pass not the bridge till you are sworn ! Sworn what ? quoth Amadis.—Whether sworn to the service of King Lisuarte's household ; if so, you shall

lose your head ! That, said Amadis, is not quite so certain. I am of that household, the knight of the queen his wife, and have been so since I won the battle for a disherited lady. By my head, replied he of the bridge, thou shalt lose thine ! for thou hast slain the best of my lineage. Hereupon they gave the spurs to their horses, and breaking their lances, met so furiously that the knight of the bridge was thrown to the ground ; but, by reason the helmet of Amadis was displaced in the encounter, he had leisure to mount again, and to give his enemy three blows with the sword, before Amadis had adjusted the lacings ; that done he of Gaul requited him with one blow on the side of the neck, that sent his head dangling upon his breast. Now, said he to the squire, go tell your lady what you have seen.

Then Amadis rode on till he came to the end of the forest, and entered a fair plain and wide, and he was delighted with the green herbs that he saw on all sides. Presently there came up an ugly dwarf upon a palfrey, whom he asked whence he came ?—From the house of the Count of Clara.—Have you seen there a young knight called Galaor ? No, said the dwarf, but in three days I will show you the best knight in this land.—Ah, dwarf, lead me then to him.—That shall I do, if you will grant me a boon, and go with me where I shall appoint. This Amadis granted, hoping that the knight of whom he spake might be his brother. So they rode on together. The following day about noon they saw two knights fighting against one, and Amadis approached, and said, Sirs, may it please ye stay awhile, and tell me on what occasion your quarrel ariseth ? At these words they ceased, and one of them replied, Because this knight main-

taineth that he alone is able to atchieve as great an enterprize as we two together. Certes, said Amadis, a slight cause ! for the goodness of the one diminisheth no jot of the other. They saw that he spake with good reason, and so ended their strife ; and they then asked him if he knew the knight who conquered Dardan. Why ask ye ? quoth Amadis.—Because we would gladly meet with him. I know not, he replied whether your meaning be good or bad ; but I saw him not long since in the court of King Lisuarte ; and he took leave of them and went his way. The three knights conferred together a little and then galloped after him. He no sooner heard them, than he turned and took his arms ; he had no lance, neither had they, having broken them in their quarrel. Alas ! my lord, quoth the dwarf, what will ye do ? do you not see that they are three ? I shall defend myself if they attack me, replied Amadis ; and by this they came up. Knight, said they, we beg a boon of you, and you must grant it if you would get from us. I shall grant it the sooner, replied Amadis, if it be reasonable. Tell us then, as a loyal knight, where we may find him by whom Dardan was slain. He who was now compelled to avow himself answered, I am he. They exclaimed at once, Ah, traitor, thou diest ! and all fell upon him. But Amadis so bestirred himself, that only one of them escaped with life from the adventure. Ah, quoth the dwarf, I take a better with me for my boon than I had thought ! :

That night they lodged with a hermit, and had poor fare for their supper. In the morning about the hour of tierce, the dwarf showed him in a pleasant valley two tall pine-trees, and under them sate a knight all armed, upon a lusty courser, and two knights, whom

he had just dismounted, were endeavouring to catch their horses ; and in the same shade another knight lay leaning on his helmet, having his shield by him ; and there were twenty lances ready against the tree, and two horses ready caparisoned. There, said the dwarf, he who leans on his helmet is the good knight of whom I spake, Angriote of Estravaus, the best knight that I have heard report of.—Why keepeth he there so many lances ? The dwarf answered, I can resolve ye : he loveth a lady of this country, who hateth him above all others ; nevertheless, he hath prevailed so much in fight that her parents were constrained to give her to him. After he had gotten her into his power, he thought himself the happiest man in the world, but she told him it was no courtesy to take a damsel against her will, and that she never willingly would be his till he had performed one thing for her, which was that he and his brother should keep this Vale of Pines for a year against all errant knights, and force them to go to King Lisuarte's court, and confess there that she is more beautiful than their mistresses. And this she devised in her great hatred to him, hoping that he would either be slain, or provoke many enemies who might protect her against him. For this cause they depart not hence all the day time, and at night retire to the castle upon yonder brow ; three months have past in which time Angriote hath never set hand to spear against any knight, because his brother hath still been conqueror. At the entrance of the valley a squire met them, and said, Sir knight, you pass not on unless you confess the mistress of yonder knight to be fairer than your own. That lie shall I never utter, answered Amadis, and rode on.

CHAP. XIX.—How Amadis fought with Angriote of Estravaus and his brother, and conquered them.



WHEN the brother of Angriote saw him coming, he took his arms and met him, saying, Certes, knight, great folly have you committed in not granting our demand! Wherewith they gave the career against each other; the shield of Amadis was pierced, but the lance broke against his corslet; his antagonist was thrown back, yet held he fast the reins till they broke, and he fell upon his neck in such plight that he knew nothing of himself. Hereon Amadis alighted and took off his helmet, and perceiving that he was in a swoon, drew him by the arm towards him; the knight then opened his eyes, and, fearing death, yielded. Amadis mounted again, for Angriote was already horsed, and had taken his arms, and sent a lance to him. Soon they encountered so gallantly, that the staves shivered, and both passed on, for they were good knights. Then Amadis seized his sword, but Angriote cried, We may have the sword battle anon, and to your cost; let us joust till yonder lances fail us, or till one be sent to the earth. And this he said, deeming that there was no knight in the world who could wield the sword better than himself. Sir, answered Amadis, I have what to do elsewhere, and cannot so long tarry.—What! would you escape so lightly? I pray thee one course more! They chose fresh spears, and met in the course so strongly that Angriote fell, and his horse upon him, and Amadis passing on fell over the horse of Angriote, and a part of the spear which had gone through his shield, was driven by the fall through his harness and into the

flesh, though but a little depth ; but he rose lightly, as one who would brook no shame for himself and in his lady's cause, and plucked the truncheon out, and went to his antagonist sword in hand. Knight, said Angriote, thou art a brave youth ; I beseech thee confess my lady is fairer than thine, before it be worse with thee. Such lie, quoth Amadis, shall my lips never utter. Then began a strife which could not long endure, for rather would Amadis have died than failed one jot in this quarrel, and he laid on so fiercely that neither the great strength nor skill of Angriote availed him ; for the sword came now upon his head, now upon his body, that the blood sprang from more than twenty wounds. He, as he could, drew back,—Of a truth, knight, there is more worth in thee than man can think. Yield ! quoth Amadis, else if we end the combat thy life also will be ended ; and that should I repent, for I esteem of thee better than thou weenest. This he said for his great goodness in arms, and for the courtesy which he had used toward his mistress, having her in his power. Angriote, who could not chuse, gave himself up for vanquished, saying, Believe me, I not so much sorrow for my foil, as for the wreckful chance that I this day lose the thing which I love best. That shall you not, said Amadis, if I can help you, and the lady will be ungrateful if she acknowledge not your honourable pains in her defence. I promise you to employ my endeavours in your behalf, so soon as I return from a quest.—Where, sir, shall I find you ?—In the court of King Lisuarte, answered Amadis. So took he leave of Angriote and passed on with the dwarf.

Five days they rode together, then the dwarf showed him a castle marvellously strong and pleasant,—There

is Castle Valderin ! within that hold you must perform the promise made to me ; take your arms, for they suffer none lightly to go out who enter there. Amadis buckled on his helm and rode on first, the dwarf and Gandalin followed ; they passed through the gate, and looked round, and could see no creature. The place is deserted, quoth Amadis. So, said the dwarf, it seems.—Why then hast thou brought me here ? Sir, said the dwarf, there was here the fiercest knight that ever I saw, and the strongest in arms, who in that porch slew two knights ; the one was my master, and him he slew cruelly, as a man in whom there was no pity : the head of that traitor is the boon which I required. I have led here many knights to obtain vengeance, but for their sins they have either been slain or thrown into cruel prison. Thou doest the part of a loyal servant, said Amadis ; yet oughtest thou to bring no knight here without telling him against whom he should fight. Sir, he answered, he is so known for one of the fierce, that if I had named him none would venture to accompany me,—it is Arcalaus, the Enchanter. Again Amadis looked round about if he might see anybody ; he alighted and waited till vespers, then asked the dwarf what they should do ? Sir, said he, the darkness is at hand : it is not good to tarry here. Nay trust me, answered Amadis, I will not budge hence till he come, or some one who can tell me tidings of him. I, said the dwarf, will not stay, lest he should see and know me. Yet shalt thou stay, quoth Amadis, for I will not excuse myself from the promise, if I may perform it. As thus they communed, Amadis espied a court somewhat farther on, wherein he entered and found no one, but he saw a dark place, with steps that went under ground. Let us see what

is here, said he. For God's sake mercy ! cried the dwarf, I would not for the world go down. But Gandalin caught him as he would have run away ; Fear not, tall fellow ! said he. And Amadis said, You shall not go till I have performed my promise, or till you see how it fares with me. Let me go, let me go ! quoth the little wretch, I acquit the promise ; for God's sake let me go ! Said Amadis, Thou shalt not say hereafter, I have failed in my promise. I desire thee not to discharge me of it. By my faith I discharge you, said the dwarf, and I will wait for you in the road, to see if you come. Go then, and good luck go with thee, quoth the knight ; I shall remain till morning. So the dwarf fled in haste.

Amadis went down the steps so far that he could see nothing ; he came to a plain ground, it was utterly dark, yet he proceeded, and groping along a wall felt a bar of iron, whereto there hung a key, and he opened the padlock of the grate ; then heard he a voice, saying, Ah, God ! how long shall this misery continue ? Ah, death ! why delayest thou to come when thou art so needed ? He listened awhile, but heard no more ; he then entered the vault, having his shield about his neck and the helmet laced, and the sword in his hand ; and passing further he found himself in a great hall, where was a lamp burning, and he saw six armed men sleeping in one bed, and by them lay their shields and hatchets. One hatchet he took, and advanced. Anon more than a hundred voices were heard crying aloud, Lord God send us death and deliver us ! Thereat was Amadis greatly astonished ; and the men who were asleep awoke, and the one said to the other, Take a scourge and make those wretches silent who disturb us in our sleep ! Aye, marry will I, said the other ; and

taking a scourge he rose, but seeing Amadis he stopt, and cried, Who goes there?—A strange knight. The man turned back and fastened the grate, and roused his comrades. Leave him to me, said the jaylor, and I will place him among the rest. This man was great and strong of limb, and taking his shield and hatchet he advanced towards Amadis;—If you fear death lay down your arms, if not, expect what my hatchet will give thee! Both raised their hatchets at once, and at once both blows fell; the jaylor's entered far into the knight's helmet; the knight's pierced through the shield of his enemy, who drew back, and so plucked the hatchet from his hand. Then Amadis drew his sword; the other grappled with him, confiding in his strength, but Amadis with the pummel of his sword drove at his face and broke his jaw, and shook him off; then followed that stroke with such another, that he never needed a surgeon. Then sheathing his sword, he recovered the hatchet from the shield, and so played his part with the other five, that only two escaped death by falling at his feet for mercy. Shew me then the prisoners! said Amadis: they led the way. Who lies here? said he, hearing a lamentable voice from a cell. A lady, said they, in great torments; and taking two keys from the jaylor's girdle, he unlocked the door; but she, who believed it was her old tormentor, exclaimed, Kill me man, and do not inflict so many martyrdoms! O king, in an evil day was I beloved by you, since that love has cost me so dear! The tears came over the eyes of Amadis for great pity: Lady, said he, I am not he whom you think, but one who will if he can deliver you; and he called for light, and when the soldier brought it, beheld a lady chained round the neck with a great chain,

and her garments fretted and worn thro' to the skin. Wretched as you behold me, said she, yet am I the daughter of a king, and thus tortured for a king's sake. So he caused the chain to be taken off, and commanded garments to be brought her, and she covered herself with the scarlet mantle of the jaylor, and he led her from the prison.

There met them one at the grate, who called out to the soldier with the light, Arcalaus demandeth where the knight is that entered? whether he be dead or taken? At these words the man let fall the torch with exceeding fear, and could make no reply. Villain! quoth Amadis, what fearest thou, being under my guard? Go on! Then they ascended the stairs, and came into the open court. The night was far spent, and the moon was clear above; but that poor lady beholding the heavens, and feeling the air, fell on her knees, and cried, Ah, gentle knight, God protect thee and give thee thy reward!

Then Amadis raising her, looked round for Gandalin, and finding him not, he feared, and exclaimed, If the best squire in the world be slain, I will take such vengeance as never has been heard of. Presently he heard a cry, and following it found the dwarf hanging by one leg from a beam over a fire of stinking smoke, and near him Gandalin tied to a post. Him he was about to untie, but the squire cried, The dwarf first, for he is in worst case; and Amadis holding him in one hand while he cut the cord, set him on his feet; then set Gandalin at liberty, and said to him, In sooth, my friend, he who placed thee here did not love thee as I do. He went toward the castle, and found the portcullis down. Gandalin shewed him the place where his horse was stabled; he burst the door and

took him out, then seated himself on a stone bench in the wall with the lady, for tho' he wished to deliver the other prisoners, yet durst he not leave her. So there he awaited daylight; meantime he asked the lady, for what king's sake she had suffered. Sir, said she, Arcalaus mortally hates him, and therefore revenged himself upon me; he seized me in the presence of many friends, and covering me with a dark cloud carried me away, and from that time till now I have never seen daylight; and this he did as the worst evil he could do to my lover, King Arban of North Wales. Is it he? quoth Amadis; now God be thanked, for dearly do I love that knight! but now do I not so much pity you as before, since you have suffered for the sake of one of the best men in the world.

When it was day, a knight looked from a window and asked Amadis, Art thou he who hast slain my jaylor and my servants? Art thou he, answered Amadis, who so treacherously murderest knights and imprisonest dames and damsels? thou art the most disloyal and cruellest knight in the world! As yet you know not all my cruelty, Arcalaus replied, and left the window; and soon they saw him enter the court well armed, upon a lusty courser. Now this was one of the largest knights in the world who were not giants, and Amadis looked at him with admiration, thinking that he must needs be of great strength. Why lookest thou at me so earnestly? quoth the Castellan.—Because thou wouldst be so good a knight were it not for thy foul disloyalty. I come in good time, quoth Arcalaus, to be preached at by one like thee! and with that he laid lance in rest, and ran the charge. The spears brake; horses and bodies met, and both horses were driven to the ground. Quickly the

knights arose, and began a fierce combat which lasted long; at length the Castellan drew back, Knight, said he, thou art in the chance of death, and I know not who thou art: tell me that I may know, for I think rather to slay than take thee. My death, Amadis replied, is in the will of God, whom I fear; and thine is in the will of the devil, who is weary of helping thee, and will now let thy soul and body perish together. You ask my name: I am Amadis of Gaul, the knight of Queen Brisena. Then renewed they their combat with fresh fury till about the hour of tierce, then Arcalaus waxed faint, and Amadis smote him down; and, as he rose, staggered him with another blow on the helmet, so that seeing himself near to die, he fled into the palace, and Amadis followed. But he running into a little chamber, at the door whereof stood a lady beholding the battle, took up a sword, for he had dropt his own in the court, and called to Amadis, Come in and finish the fight! This hall is larger, answered Amadis: let it be here. I will not come out, quoth the Castellan. What! quoth he of Gaul, thinkest thou so to save thyself? and placing his shield before him he entered the chamber, his sword being raised to strike; immediately the strength of all his limbs was gone, and he lost his senses, and fell to the ground like a dead man. Thou shalt die by no other death than this, said Arcalaus: what say you, my lady, have I well avenged myself? and with that he disarmed Amadis, who knew nothing of what was doing, and put on the armour himself, and said to his lady, As you regard yourself, let none remove this knight till his soul shall have forsaken his body. Then he descended into the court, and said to her whom *Amadis had delivered*, Seek for some other to release

you; for this champion is dispatched. And when Gandalin heard these words, he fell down senseless. Arcalaus took the lady, and led her where Amadis lay in that deadly trance; and she seeing him in such plight, wanted no tears to express the abundance of her grief. As soon as he is dead, said Arcalaus to that other lady who was his wife, place this woman again in her prison. I will go to the court of King Lisuarte, and there relate how I performed this battle, upon condition that he who conquered should cut off his enemy's head, and within fifteen days publish his victory at that court. By these means none shall challenge me about his death, and I shall obtain the greatest glory in the world, having overcome him who conquered every one.

Then he went into the court, and ordered Gandalin and the dwarf to prison; but Gandalin reviled him with the names of traitor and villain, and provoked him to kill him, desiring death. Arcalaus made his men drag him by the leg to a dungeon; If I killed thee, said he, thou wouldst endure no farther pain, and there thou shalt have worse than death. He then mounted upon the horse of Amadis, and, accompanied by three squires set forth for the court.

CHAP. XX.—Of the battle which Amadis had with Arcalaus the Enchanter, and how he escaped from his enchantment.



RINDALAYA, the lady whom Amadis had delivered, made such dole over him as was pitiful to hear. The wife of Arcalaus comforted her so well as she could, for she was of disposition clean contrary to her husband, and always be-

sought God in her prayers to turn his heart. As they were thus together, they saw two damsels enter the hall, each bearing in her hands many lighted candles, which they placed along the sides of the chamber wherein Amadis lay ; the ladies who beheld them this while being neither able to speak nor move. One of the damsels took a book from a casket which she brought under her arm, and read from it aloud, and at times a voice answered her, and presently the answers were made by many voices together, as tho' an hundred, and all in the chamber. Then there came another book through the floor of the chamber, whirling as if driven by the wind, and it stopt at the feet of her who read, and she took and broke it into four parts, and burnt them at the sides of the chamber where the candles stood. Then she went to Amadis, and took him by the hand !—Arise, Sir, for you lie uneasily ? and Amadis arose and cried, Holy Mary ! what is this ? I was well nigh dead. Certes, sir knight, replied the damsel, such a man as you should not perish in this sort, for by your hand must others die who better deserve it ! and with that, without more words, both damsels returned thither from whence they came.

Then Amadis asked what had past, and Grindalaya told him all. I felt him disarm me, said he, but all seemed as in a dream. Then arming himself in the harness of Arcalaus, he said to his wife, look to this lady well till I return ; and he went to deliver Gandalin. The men of Arcalaus seeing him thus armed, ran all ways ; but he descended the steps, and through the hall where he had slain the jaylor, and so to the dungeon : a dreadful place it was for the captives : in length, an hundred times as far as a man's spread

arms can reach ; one only and a half of that span wide ; dark, for neither light nor air could enter, and so full that it was crowded. Amadis came to the door and called, Gandalin ! but he, who was like one dead, hearing the voice was greatly terrified, and made no answer, for he believed that his master was slain, and he himself enchanted. Gandalin ? where art thou ? again cried Amadis. O God ! will he not answer ? and he said to the prisoners, tell me for God's sake is the squire living whom they have just now cast here ? but then the dwarf knew his voice, and answered, Here we are ! Thereat greatly rejoicing, Amadis went to the lamp in the hall, and kindled torches and took them to the dungeon, and loosed Gandalin's chain, for he lay nearest the door, and bade him deliver his comrades.

They came from the dungeon, an hundred and fifteen men in all, of whom thirty were knights, and they followed Amadis, exclaiming, O fortunate knight ! even so did our Saviour go out from hell, leading away his servants whom he had delivered. Christ give thee thy reward ! and, when they came to the sun-light and open sky, they fell upon their knees, and with lifted hands blest God who had given that knight strength to their deliverance.

Amadis seeing their faces so pale and overspent, that they seemed like dead rather than living creatures, was moved to exceeding compassion. One among them he remarked for his better shape and stature, who came forward and asked what they should call their deliverer ; and hearing it was Amadis, replied that he also was of King Lisuarte's court, being by name Brandoyuas. Right glad was Amadis thereof, for he had often heard his good report, and the

sorrow that there was for his loss. The other prisoners then confessed their bounden duty to him, and desired him to appoint what they should do, and he willed them each to do as he thought best. They telling him that wherever they might be they should be at his command, departed ; Brandoyuas and two squires only remaining with Amadis.

They now went to the wife of Arcalaus. Lady, said Amadis, for your sake, and the sake of these women, I forbear to set the castle on fire. She answered him weeping, God is witness of the trouble and grief I endure for my husband's evil ways ; but I must obey him, and pray for his amendment : now I am at your mercy. Then Amadis requested arms for Brandoyuas, and fit garments for Grindalaya ; Give them, said he, if it please you, at your free will : the horse and arms of Arcalaus I must take, for he hath taken mine, and with them a sword of more value than all this ! This the dame willingly accorded, and she besought them to take food before they departed, and the best viands were brought forth that so short warning could afford. But Grindalaya could not eat, uneasy to be gone ; whereat the knights smiled, and still more at the dwarf, who could eat nothing and scarcely could he speak, and his colour was gone. Dwarf, said Amadis, shall we wait for Arcalaus, that I may give thee the boon which you released ? Sir, said he, so dear hath that cost me, that never while I live will I beg another : let us go before the devil comes back again. I cannot stand upon the leg he hung me by, and my nose is so full of the brimstone smoke of that fire that I can do nothing but sneeze. So after they had repasted they took leave of the dame, and she commending Amadis to God said, &c.

pray God that there may be peace between my lord and you ! Certes, lady, quoth he, however that may be, there will be peace between you and me, for you have deserved it. And the time came when these words greatly profited that lady.

They departed together, and on the second day separated, Grindalaya and Brandoyuas going to the court of Lisuarte ; Amadis pursuing his search. And where wilt thou go, my friend ? said he to the dwarf. I would remain and be your servant, quoth he, and he kissed the hand of Amadis as his master. Not far had they travelled when they met one of the damsels who had disenchanted him ; she was lamenting loudly, and Amadis enquired wherefore. Yonder knight hath taken a casket from me, which will not profit him, though with its contents the best knight in the world was delivered from death by me and my companion, whom another knight hath now carried off with design to force her. Now the damsel knew not Amadis, by reason that his bever was closed. But he forthwith galloping on overtook the knight, and soon forced from him the casket, and restored it to the damsel, and then hastened to her friend's deliverance. Her he found struggling with the knight, who seeing him took his arms :—In an evil hour dost thou hinder me of my will ! God confound such a will ! quoth Amadis. If I do not revenge myself, said the knight, may I never carry arms. The world will lose little by that, quoth he of Gaul ; and meeting him in full career, drove him to the earth with a force that broke his neck, and then trampled him under his horse's feet.

Amadis took off his helmet, and immediately the damsel knew him, and he remembered her, for it was she who had led him to deliver Urganda's friend from

Castle Bradoyd. By this her companion with Gandalin was come up, and they both embraced him, and thanked him for their deliverance. On my faith, said he, in worse danger was I when you succoured me: how knew ye of my plight? She who had taken him by the hand answered, My Aunt Urganda bade me ten days ago hasten to be there by that hour. So Amadis commended himself to that his true friend, and courteously taking leave of the damsels, they departed each on their way.

CHAP. XXI.—How Arcalaus carried tidings to the court of king Lisuarte that Amadis was slain, and of the lamentations that were made for him.

SUCH speed made Arcalaus in the armour and on the horse of him whom he had enchanted, that on the tenth day he met King Lisuarte riding abroad in the morning to take the air, accompanied with a great train. They seeing the horse and arms of Amadis were greatly rejoiced, and rode on to welcome him; but coming nearer, they saw that it was not he for whom they looked, for Arcalaus had his head and hands unarmed, and they were greatly amazed. Arcalaus came before the king and said, I come, sir, to acquit a promise wherein I stand bound, to let you understand how I have slain a knight in battle. And albeit I must be content to declare mine own praise, which were more honourable for me being reported by another in mine absence, yet am I constrained to do no less, for the covenant was between me and him whom I have slain, that the conqueror should cut off the other's head, and present himself before you as this day. If he slew me, I told

him it was Arcalaus whom he would slay ; and much was I grieved when he said that he was the queen's knight, and by name Amadis of Gaul. In this guise came he to his death, and I remain with the honour of the battle.

Holy Mary ! exclaimed the king, is the best knight in the world slain ? and with that they all began to lament. But Arcalaus turned back by the way he came, and all cursed him and besought God that he might speedily die an evil death, which they with their own swords would at once have given him but for his own tale, how Amadis was slain in an accorded battle.

Forthwith the king returned in heavy affliction. The news spread and reached the queen's house, and she and all her ladies lamented, for greatly was Amadis beloved by all ; but Oriana hearing their lamentation sent the Damsel of Denmark to enquire its cause, who presently returned beating her face, and with a wild cry looked at Oriana. Ah, lady ! what a grief—what a misery ! So that Oriana trembled from head to foot, and exclaimed, Holy Virgin, if Amadis should be dead ! The damsel answered, Ah me, he is dead ! and with that Oriana's heart died away within her, and she fell. Then ran the damsel to Mabilia tearing her hair, Help, help, for my lady is dying. Mabilia, though her own grief was so great that greater none could be, yet not for that did she neglect what remedy might profit ; she took the princess in her arms, and poured* cold water on her face, and bade the damsel fasten the door of the chamber, that none might see her in that passion. She recovering her

* The English translation says, she unlaced her garments to give her more liberty, and bathed her temples and pulses with vinegar and cold water.

senses, exclaimed, Ah friends, let me die and be at rest : why would ye make me so faithless that I should live even an hour after him ! What though his dwelling be in the cold earth, where all love ceaseth, yet greater shall be our loves when in the other world we are united ! and then again she swooned ; her long hair hanging to the ground, her hands clenched upon her breast that Mabilia thought that she was indeed dead, and cried, Oh God ! let me die also, since they whom I loved best are gone. For God's sake, dear lady, quoth the damsel, let not your good sense fail you now, when it is so needed. Roused by these words Mabilia recovered herself ; they placed Oriana in bed, and poured water again upon her face and upon her breast, so that she revived. Take heart, said Mabilia, and do not so readily believe such tidings ; that knight may have borrowed the arms of Amadis, or stolen them : who shall vouch for his truth ? But Oriana had fixed her eyes upon the window where first she talked with Amadis, and in a faint and feeble voice exclaimed, How bitter is the remembrance that thou excitest ! long as thou shalt last, never will two others discourse in thee with such pure and perfect truth ! Think you, said Mabilia, that if I believed his death I should have power to comfort you ? and thus with such consolation all that day they strove to cheer her who would not be comforted ; and the night was worse than the day, and oftentimes they feared that she would never see the morning. But the next day, at the hour when they were about to lay the napkins before the king, Brandoyuas entered the palace, leading Grindalaya, and they both went and knelt before the king. He who greatly esteemed him, and had been troubled for his long absence, enquired where he had

tarried. Sir, said he, in a dungeon whence I should never have come out but for the good knight Amadis, who delivered me and this lady, and many others, doing there such deeds of arms as only he could have atchieved. And he would there have been slain by the worst treason that ever was known, by the traitor Arcalaus, if two damsels had not helped him, who surely must not a little have loved him. Lisuarte at this, rose instantly from table ;—Tell me, my friend, by the faith which you owe to God and to me, is Amadis alive? By that faith, replied Brandoyuas, I left him alive and well not ten days ago! Then was there such joy that greater could not be. The king sent Grindalaya to Brisena, and well was she welcomed for her tidings. The damsel of Denmark soon heard it, and hastened to Oriana, and restored her from death to life ; and Mabilia sent for Grindalaya that they might hear the whole from her own mouth, and the princesses would suffer her to eat no where but at their own table, that she might relate it more at length. On her return to the queen's apartment, she found King Arban, of North Wales, who dearly loved her. Then was there such joy as cannot be expressed ; and King Arban told Brisena how she was daughter to King Ardroyd of Serolys ; and Brisena, as well for her high rank as for the good tidings she had brought, besought her to remain in her court ; to the which she was nothing loth. Brisena also sent for Grindalaya's sister, Aldeva : this was she who was the friend of Galaor, and for whose sake he had been so persecuted by the dwarf. So there were great rejoicings in the court of King Lisuarte.

CHAP. XXII.—Of the trick which a Knight put upon Don Galaor and how he revenged himself; and of what happened to Amadis in the Castle where was the fair child Briolania.

FIFTEEN days Galaor abode in the monastery before his wounds were healed; then he departed, and rode where chance guided him. About midday he came to a fountain in a valley, and by the fountain was an armed knight, having no horse, nor other beast. Marvelling thereat, Galaor said to him, Sir knight, how came you thus afoot? The knight answered, in riding toward my castle I fell in with fellows who slew my horse, so that I must walk home, though sorely tired, for my people know not my case. Not so, replied Galaor, you shall have my squire's beast. I thank you, sir, quoth the knight; but, before we depart hence, you shall know the virtue of this fountain, which is such that no poison, however strong, hath any force against the water. Beasts that have been poisoned immediately recover by drinking here, and all the people of the district come hither, and find relief for their infirmities. In sooth you tell me wonders, said Galaor, and I will alight and taste it. The knight replied, Good reason you should, being near that which you ought to seek from afar.

Galaor dismounted, and bade his squire alight and drink as he did, and he placed his arms against a tree. Go and drink, said the knight, and I will hold your horse; and while they were drinking, he put on Galaor's helmet, took his lance, and mounted and rode away, saying, Farewell, sir knight, you must stay here till you trick another as I have tricked you. Ah, knave, quoth Galaor, thou shalt repent this! You

must provide yourself with horse and arms first, said the traitor.

Gone is the knight so fast as he could gallop, and Galaor in great wrath followed in the same tract upon the squire's palfrey. At length he came to a double way, and knowing not which to take, stood still in perplexity. Presently there came up a damsel, riding more than apace, of whom he demanded if she had seen a knight on a bay horse, bearing a white shield with a vermillion flower.—And what would you with him? I would recover my horse and arms which he has stolen; and he told her what had happened. How, said she, would you recover them being disarmed? Only let me find him! quoth Galaor.—Well, grant me a boon, and I will bring you to him. So she rode on, and Galaor after her; but the damsel was foremost, for Galaor's palfrey could not keep up with her, carrying both him and his squire, and they rode three leagues without seeing her. Then they met her returning, for the false knight was her paramour, and she had been advising with him how he might spoil Galaor of his armour. So she led Galaor to a tent, where the knight was ready to kill him without danger. Galaor alighted; the knight stood at the entrance of the tent, and exclaimed, Give me now the rest of your armour or I will slay thee! Certes, quoth Galaor, I cannot fear such a knave as thou art; and, avoiding his blow, he smote him so manfully upon the head as made him put knee to earth, and then griped his helmet and plucked it off; and the knight cried aloud to his leman for help. She hastily drawing nigh, called to Galaor to hold, for that was the boon which she required; but she spoke too late, for Galaor in his anger had already made him in

a state that needed no surgeon. Wretch that I am ! said she, in beguiling another I have deceived myself, An ill death kill thee, knight ! I will claim thy boon so that thou shalt die for it ; and, if thou shouldst refuse to grant it, I will every where proclaim thee and shame thee. Damsel, said Galaor, you spoke too late, else would I have spared him, though he well deserved death. Then mounting, he rode on. After some time he looked and saw that she was following him : whither go you ? said he.—In your company, which I will not leave, till I have found opportunity to demand my boon, and make thee die an evil death.—Lady, you had better choose some other atonement.—Nothing but thy life for his. So they rode on for three days ; the damsel perpetually reviling him, and then they entered the forest of Angaduza.

After Amadis had taken leave of Urganda's damsels, about noon he left the forest, and came out upon a plain, wherein there was a goodly castle, and in the plain there was a chariot, the richest that ever he saw, drawn by twelve palfreys, and covered with crimson sattin, so that he could see nothing within. The chariot was guarded by eight knights on each side. As Amadis approached to see what it might be, one of the knights bade him keep off. I have no ill intent, said Amadis. Be that as it may, quoth the knight, you shall not approach. You are not such that you ought to see what goes there ; and if you persist you must do battle with us. Each singly would be enough, how much more altogether ! Then he of Gaul took his arms, and sped so well that there soon remained only one enemy to deal with ; his helmet he smote off, and when Amadis saw under it the face of an old man, and the grey hairs, he drew back. Six

knight, quoth he, you should now leave this pursuit, for if you have not before won honour, your age excuses you now. Nay, friend, replied the old knight, the young must fight to obtain renown, and the old to preserve what they have won. Your words, sir knight, are wiser than mine, said Amadis; and he advanced to the chariot, and lifted up the hangings: within it he saw a marble monument, having the figure of a crowned king thereon in royal robes, but the crown was cleft to the head, and the head down to the neck. There was also a dame sitting on a couch, and by her a young maiden of most excellent beauty. I pray ye tell me, madam, said he, what figure is this. She seeing that he was not of her company, replied, who gave thee permission to look here?—None other than my desire thus to do.—And my knights, what did they? More harm to me than good, said Amadis. Then the lady in years lifted the curtain and saw her knights, some laying dead, some endeavouring to catch their horses, and she was greatly moved, and said to Amadis, Cursed be the hour in which thou, who hast done such devilries, wert born! Lady, he replied, your knights attacked me. I beseech you tell me the meaning of this.—As God shall help me, you shall never learn it from me whom you have so injured. And when Amadis beheld how wroth she was, he departed and went his way.

The knights of the lady then placed their dead comrades in the chariot, and went towards the castle with great shame. Amadis meantime rode on, and when he had gone about a league, he saw the old knight riding after him, who called to him to stop. The lady whom you saw, said he, sends to you, and requests you will lodge in her castle to-night, that she

may make amends for her discourtesy. Gentle sir, quoth Amadis, she was so moved that meseems my presence should cause her more wrath than pleasure. Believe me, answered the knight, she will rejoice in your return. Amadis seeing the knight was of an age that should not lie, and won by his manner, turned back with him. On the way he asked the meaning of the figure, but the knight would not resolve him ; and when they drew near the castle, the old man rode on to inform his lady of her guest. Amadis slowly followed to the gate, over which there was a tower, and he saw the lady and the young damsel at one of the tower windows, and the lady said to him, Enter, sir knight, for we greatly rejoice at your coming. He answered, Lady, I rejoice to obey rather than displease you ; and entered the castle. Presently there was a great stir within, and many knights and armed men came out and beset him, crying, yield or thou art dead ! Certes, quoth he, I will not willingly enter the prison of such false ones ! and with that he laced his helm ; but his shield he could not take, because of the press there was upon him. They struck at him on all sides ; he nevertheless worthily defended himself so long as his horse could stand, felling at his feet all whom he could reach with a fair blow ; but his horse being slain, and he himself sorely prest, he made toward a shed which was in the court, and there by the wall defended himself to better advantage. Gandalin and the dwarf were taken in his sight, which the more inflamed him ; but his enemies were so many, and laid on such heavy load, that sometimes he was upon his knees, and he saw no way of escaping death, and they would shew him no mercy, because he had slain and grievously

wounded so many. But God and his own worth succoured him in this peril. The young damsel beheld the battle, and seeing his brave behaviour she was moved to pity, and calling to one of her women, she said, I had rather all my people were slain than that good knight should perish—follow me ! Lady, said the woman, what would you do ? Let my lions loose upon his enemies, said she, and I command you being my vassal to release them, for you can do it because they know you. Upon this the woman loosed the chain of the lions, who were two in number and very fierce, and then she cried out, save yourselves, for the lions have broke loose ! They who were besetting Amadis forthwith fled, yet not so lightly but that many of them were torn to pieces by the beasts. But Amadis immediately made for the gate as well as he could, and going out closed it behind him, and fastened the lions in the court. Then he seated himself upon a stone, sore wearied as one who had fought hardly, still holding in his hand his sword which was broken.

The lions meantime having scoured the court, ran here and there, and would fain have escaped thro' the grate. The people of the castle dared not descend to them, nor she who had let them loose, for they were too fierce to be controlled. In this distress, not knowing how to help themselves, they agreed that their mistress should ask Amadis to open the gate, which perhaps he might do at a lady's request. Full loth was she to ask him, considering how little she had deserved such favour at his hands ; yet, knowing it was her last refuge, she looked from the window and said, Sir knight, however hardly we have dealt with you, let your courtesy exceed our demerit, open the gate 'hat the lions may go out and we may be safe. We

will make what amends we can for the past, and on my faith I assure you my intent was only to hold you as my prisoner, till you would consent to be my knight. Amadis mildly answered, that should have been gained in another guise: I would willingly have become your knight to do you service, as I am the knight of all dames and damsels who need it.—And will you not open the gate?—No! as God shall help me you shall not receive that courtesy from me. With that she went from the window lamenting, and the fair young maiden said to him, Sir knight, there are those here who had no part in the wrong which has been done you, and who deserve some favour at your hands. Then Amadis greatly admiring her, answered, Fair friend, do you wish me to open the gate? I should thank you earnestly, said she; and seeing Amadis rise to do it, she stopt him, saying, stay a moment while I make the lady secure your safety. So that he marvelled at her discretion. The lady then warranted him that he should be safe from her people, and promised to release to him Gandalin and the dwarf, and the old knight bade him take a mace and shield to kill the lions as they came out. Give me the arms! said Amadis; but God forsake me if I do harm to those who have aided me so well. Certes, sir knight, quoth the old man, you will not fail in your faith to man, since you keep it so to beasts. Then they threw to him the mace and shield, and Amadis took them, and sheathed the little of his sword that was left, and opened the gate, being ready with the mace in his own defence. Immediately the lions ran by him into the open country. He entered the court, and presently the lady and her people came to receive him, and they brought him Gandalin and the dwarf. I have lost my horse here, said Amadis; if it

please you, lady, give me another, else I must depart on foot. That, quoth she were shame for a knight like you ; but remain here this night, and on the morrow we will provide you a horse. Then they disarmed him, and brought him a costly mantle, and led him to the apartment where the lady and the young damsel expected him, and they seeing him so young and beautiful, being so brave a knight, were greatly amazed. He on his part no less wondered at the damsel, how fair she was ; but addressing the lady, he said, If it please you, tell me what the figure meant which I saw in the chariot. She replied, Promise me to do what you ought after having heard it, and I will tell you ; otherwise, I pray you hold me excused. It were no reason, madam, quoth Amadis, to promise lightly, I know not what : if it be to do what befits a knight, I shall not fail you. You say well, sir, said she ; and then dismissing all, her attendants, she began.

Sir knight, that figure of stone is made in remembrance of the father of this fair maiden, who lies in the monument which you saw in the chariot. He was a crowned king, and being upon his throne on a festival day his brother came up, and drawing a sword from under his cloak, smote him on the head and cleft it, as you saw in the statue. This was a concerted treason ; he had brought with him many adherents, and seized the kingdom which he still holds. This child, the only one of the murdered king, was then under the care of that old knight whom you have seen ; who fled with her to me, being her aunt. I procured my brother's body, and entombed it as you have seen, and every day it is laid in the chariot, and carried forth ; and I have sworn

that none should see the monument but those who attain the sight by arms, nor having seen it, learn the meaning without promising to take vengeance for so wicked a treason. Now, if you be a noble knight bound to prosecute virtue, and on so just occasion, you will employ the forces God hath lent ye in this right cause ; and I will continue this course, being sure of you, till I have found two champions more, to fight with the traitor and his two sons, for they will not undertake the battle except they be together.

Let them come one by one, said Amadis, and I will singly cope with them. That, quoth she, they will never consent to ; but do you return here at a year's end, and I will have the other two champions ready. I will not fail, answered Amadis ; and do not you trouble yourself in that search, for I will bring those with me who shall well maintain your right. This he said trusting in that time to meet his brother Galaor and Agrayes. They heartily thanking him, bade him besure they were good knights, for that wicked king and his sons were some of the strongest knights in the world. If I find but one of those whom I look for, said he, I shall not care for a third, however strong they may be. Tell us then, gentle sir, of what country you are, and where we may find you ? I am of the house of Lisuarte, Queen Brisena's knight. Now then, let us go eat, said she, with the better appetite after this agreement. Then went they into a spacious hall, where such cheer and honour was made him as might be desired till the hour of rest came. The good night being given on all sides, he was conducted to his chamber by the damsel who had loosed the lions. Sir knight, said she, there is one in

this castle who helped you when you knew it not.— And when was that ?—When I set the lions loose to save you by my young lady's order ; for she pitied you : if she live, she will be without peer for wisdom as well as beauty. Of a truth, quoth Amadis, I believe so ; but tell her I truly thank her, and bid her think me her knight. She will gladly hear me say so, replied the damsel ; and with that she departed, leaving Amadis in bed. All this Gandalin and the dwarf heard, who lay in another bed at his feet ; and the dwarf, who knew not of the loves of Amadis and Oriana, thought that he loved the young maiden, and had therefore called himself her knight, and sorely did Amadis suffer afterwards for this error.

In the morning after mass, Amadis asked the names of those with whom he was to do battle. The father, said the lady, is called Abiseos, the sons Darasion and Dramis, all three of great prowess. And where do they reign ? In Sobradisa, which borders upon Serolis, and on the other side is bounded by the sea. He then armed himself and mounted, and was about to take his leave, when the young damsel came to him, bringing a rich sword which had been her father's. Sir knight, said she, use this sword while it may last you, for my sake, and God prosper you therewith. Amadis received it with a smile : Hold me, lady, for your knight ! Certes, lady, quoth the dwarf, you gain not a little in gaining such a knight.

CHAP. XXIII.—Of the cruel and hard battle between Amadis and Don Galaor, and how they knew each other.



MADIS rode on without any adventure till he entered the forest of Angaduza, where he met a knight and a damsel ; and the knight coming near drew his sword, and ran at the dwarf to cut off his head. The dwarf fell from his horse with fear, and cried lustily for help. Amadis with all speed went to protect him. Why would you slay my dwarf ? quoth he ; trust me it is but poor manhood to lay hands on so poor a wretch : he is mine, and I shall defend him. For that, replied the other, I am sorry ; but at any rate I must have his head. Do battle first, quoth Amadis. They took their shields and ran at each other ; both shields were pierced and both breast-plates. Their horses shocked together and their bodies, and both were driven to the ground ; but the sword-battle that ensued none could have seen without affright, for never before had either warrior found himself so matched nor in such peril ; their shields were shattered, their helmets hacked and bruised, their mail sliced away, and every where free openings for the sword. Both at length drew back to breathe. Knight, said the stranger, do not suffer this any longer for the sake of a dwarf : let me cut off his head, and I will make amends to you for the wrong hereafter. Talk not to me of that, said Amadis : the dwarf shall not be harmed. I must either perish, said the knight, or give his head to that damsel. Said Amadis, One of us shall perish first ! and resuming his shield and sword, he renewed the combat more fiercely, provoked at the knight's unreasonable will. But if he was

strong, the other was not weak, and the battle continued till each expected nothing but death, though neither of them a whit abated of his courage. When they were in this plight a knight came up, who crossed himself to see so desperate a combat, and asked the damsel how it began. I set them on, said she, and end as it will, it must be to my joy : I shall be glad if either of them be killed, much more if both. That, quoth the knight, is an evil disposition : wherefore do you so hate them ? I will tell you : he who hath most of his shield left, is the man whose death my uncle Arcalaus most desires, and is named Amadis ; the other is called Galaor, and he slew the man whom I loved best. I obtained a boon from him, and have asked him one which will cost him his life ; for, because that other knight is the best in the world, I have demanded the head of his dwarf ; both are brought near death hereby to my great pleasure. A curse upon thee, woman ! cried the knight ; and he drew his sword and smote her head from her shoulders : take this for the sake of thy uncle Arcalaus and his prison, from whence that knight released me ! and with that he galloped to the combatants.—Hold, Sir Amadis, for it is your brother Galaor !

Then Amadis threw down his shield and sword, and the brethren embraced, and Galaor knelt down and besought his pardon. Brother ! quoth Amadis, the danger through which I have passed is well requited, since it has proved to me your great prowess ; and then they unlaced their helmets, for they had need of air, and the knight told them how he had served the damsel for her wickedness. Good fortune befall you for doing it, quoth Galaor ; for now am I clear of my boon. And indeed, sir knight, said the dwarf, I am

better pleased that you are quit by these means, than in the way you first designed. Now, said the stranger, come with me to my castle. I am the happiest man in the world, Sir Amadis, to have requited you with this service for delivering me from the cruellest dungeon in which ever wretch lay.—Where was that?—In the castle of Arcalaus: my name is Balays of Car-sante. So they went to that good knight's castle, where they were laid in bed, and their wounds dressed; and Amadis dispatched his dwarf to inform Queen Brisena that he had found Galaor, and would bring him to Windsor as soon as they were able to travel.

CHAP. XXIV.—How Agrayes and Don Galvanes and Olivas arrived at the court of King Lisuarte.

KING LISUARTE, as he was a great hunter, when affairs of more consequence to his state did not occupy him, went frequently to hunt in a forest near Windsor. The forest being well kept, was stored with beasts of chase, and he always went out in his hunting apparel, provided with all things needful for the sport. In this equipage going one day near the great road, he saw three armed knights and a damsel on their way, and sent a squire to call them. When they came near, the king knew Don Galvanes, and embraced him and bade him welcome. The other knights also he courteously received, for he was the man in the world who with the best good will received all errant knights. Sir, quoth Galvanes, you see here my nephew Agrayes, and I present him to you as one of the best knights in the world. Certes, gentle sir, said Lisuarte, I am greatly

beholden to you for this coming; and with that he embraced the prince. Then recollecting the third,—Sir Olivas! it is long since we have seen you, and I do not willingly let so good a knight be absent. Sir, quoth Olivas, mine own troubles have kept me from your sight and service, nor am I yet free from them; and then he told the king how the Duke of Bristol had slain his cousin. Thereat was Lisuarte moved to sorrow, for he who was slain had been a good knight. Make your appeal in my court, said he, and the duke shall answer it. They then proceeded toward Windsor, relating as they went how they had saved the damsel from the fire, wherein she should have been burnt for Galaor's sake.

The news of their arrival soon reached the queen's palace, to the joy of all, but chiefly of Olinda. She instantly leaving the chamber, went to Mabilia: Are you not rejoiced at your brother's coming? Oh, yes! quoth Mabilia, for I love him dearly. Then ask the queen to send for him that you may see him, and that those who love you may take part in your pleasure. Brisena at this entreaty sent for the new-come knights. Right glad was Agraves of this summons; and, leaving the queen's converse as soon as might be, he seated himself between his sister and his mistress. But his eyes were so fixed upon Olinda, and his answers to Mabilia so vague and from the purpose, that she soon saw her brother's case; and, to give him opportunity of talk, called to her uncle Galvanes. Come, said she, I would talk with you in yonder window, that Agraves may not hear our secrets. Besure the lovers lost not their time; and it was accorded between them that Agraves should remain in this court with Amadis, if his cousin so advised him.

By this time the knights were summoned to table ; they found the boards spread with choice food, and Lisuarte bade them be seated with other knights of great worship. While they were placing the napkins, two knights entered the hall and knelt before the king, and the one asked, Sir, is Amadis of Gaul here ? I would he were, replied Lisuarte. So also would I, quoth the knight, who need his assistance. Who are ye ? Angriote of Estravaus ; and this is my brother. When King Arban of North Wales heard that, he rose from table ; and taking Angriote, who was still kneeling, by the hand, raised him up and said, Sir, do you know Angriote ? No, quoth Lisuarte : I never till now saw him.—Certes, sir, they who know him hold him' for one of the best knights in your land. Gentle sir, quoth Lisuarte, pardon me if I have not honoured you to your desert : it was because I knew you not ; besure you are welcome, and that with heart. Where knew you Amadis ? Angriote then related what had passed between them, and his own overthrow. No sooner had he made an end, than Ardian the dwarf arrived, and saluted the king in the name of his master Amadis.—Where did you leave him ?—Alive and well ! but if you would learn more, let me see the queen, for to her is my bidding. We will not remain ignorant for that, quoth Lisuarte, and forthwith he sent to call Brisena, who came with fifteen of her ladies into the hall, and there were those present who blest the dwarf for this sight of their mistresses. Lady, then said the dwarf, your knight humbly saluteth you, and sends to say that he has found his brother. Then told he the whole chance, and that they would set forth as soon as their wounds were healed.

So glad was the king thereof that he requested and commanded all who were there not to depart before their arrival, for he would hold the most honourable court that might be. They willingly assented, and praised him much for the design ; and Lisuarte also desired the queen to collect about her the fairest and noblest damsels, that for their sake the more good knights might be drawn to Windsor.

CHAP. XXV.—How Amadis and Galaor and Balays of Carsante determined to go to King Lisuarte, and of the great adventures which befell them on the road.



WHEN Amadis and Galaor were well recovered, they and their host, Sir Balays, departed for Windsor. After they had travelled five days they came to a cross road, and where the roads crossed there was a great tree, and under it there was a dead knight, lying on a costly bed ; one taper was burning at his feet, and another at his head, and those tapers were so made that no wind could extinguish them. The knight was armed, but no covering over him ; there were many wounds in his head, and the trucheon of a lance was in his throat, the iron appearing through, and he with both hands held the truncheon, as if striving to draw it out. They were greatly amazed thereat. Besure, quoth Amadis, this knight is not thus laid here without great cause ; if we tarry here awhile some adventure will ensue. Then said Galaor, I swear by my faith of knighthood not to leave the place till I know who the knight was, and why he was slain, and to revenge him if justice demand it. Brother, answered Amadis, this vow somewhat displeaseth me : I fear it will detain you

long. And this he said thinking of Oriana, from whose sight he would not willingly be hindered. Galaor replied, I have sworn. And he alighted and seated himself by the bed, and his comrades did the same, for they would not leave him alone.

This was between nones and vespers. Presently they espied a knight and two esquires; the one of whom carried a damsel before him, she giving many shrieks and outcries, because the knight often smote her with the end of his lance. As they passed by the bed, the damsel saw the three companions, and she cried out, Ah! thou good knight that there liest dead, wert thou living thou wouldst not suffer this villainy! At these words the knight smote her so cruelly that the blood ran down her face, and then they galloped away. So villainous a knight saw I never till now! quoth Amadis. I will not suffer this brother! if I tarry long, proceed you and Balays to Windsor. Then he mounted and took his arms, and calling Gandalin to follow him, rode full speed in pursuit.

Galaor and Balays remained till the night closed. There then came up an armed knight along the road which Amadis had taken, and he was groaning. What knight was he, quoth he, who went full speed along the road? They replied, why ask you? An ill death be his lot, quoth he, for he is as fierce as if all the devils were with him. What fierceness hath he shewn to you? Because he would not tell me whither he went so fast, I caught his bridle, and told him he should either tell or fight. Fighting will take less time, said he, and in the encounter he drove me and my horse to earth, and hurt me as you see. At this Galaor and Balays laughed, saying, you are taught not to be over curious another time. Do you laugh at me?

quoth he: you shall have no cause to laugh. Then coming near Galaor's horse, he gave him a blow in the face, and made him rear and break his bridle, and run away. He would have done the same to the other, but they caught up their spears and prevented him. If I have paid for my discourtesy to the other knight, said he, so have you for your laughter ;—and he rode off. God never help me in my need, said Balays, if I make thee not give thy horse for the one thou hast sent ranging ! So telling Galaor he would be with him the next day unless fortune failed, he galloped away.


Galaor remained alone with the dead knight, for his squire was gone after the horse. Five hours of the night he remained watching ; then, overcome with heaviness, he placed his shield against his helmet as a pillow, and lay down and slept. When he awoke there was no light of the tapers to be seen, and the dead knight was gone. Shame on me, said he, that I could not watch ! but I will take penance by seeking him on foot. As he was doubtful which way to go, he heard the neighing of horses, and shaped his course towards the sound. After he had proceeded some way the morning broke, and he saw two knights, the one of whom had dismounted to read certain letters graven on a stone. They sent me here vainly, said the one, for this is a foolish errand ; and he mounted again, and they rode off together. Galaor called out to them, Know you, sirs, who hath carried the dead knight from under the tree in the cross-way ? The one answered, we do not know ; but after midnight we saw three damsels and ten squires with a litter.—Which way did they take ? He followed the road which they pointed, and met a damsel of whom he asked the same question. She replied, Promise to re-

venge his death, and I will resolve you. That shall I do, if, as I believe, it may be done justly. Then mount my palfrey, and I will ride behind. But Galaor would by no means take the saddle ; so he rode behind her for two leagues, and came to a fair castle : Here, said she, you will find what you seek. Tell me where to find you, and for whom to ask.—For Don Galaor, in the court of King Lisuarte. Then the damsel left him, and he went in.

In the middle of the court the dead knight was laid, and they were making great dole over him. Galaor drew nigh and asked of an old knight who the dead was.—Such a one as the world might with reason lament, Antebon, a knight of Gaul.—How came he by his death?—He had a fair daughter by that lady whom you see bewailing him ; a neighbouring knight loved her, and carried her off by force, who greatly disliked him, while her father was gone to the tree in the cross-ways to wait, as was his wont, for adventures. But she did nothing but weep, and she told the knight that she had sworn to her mother never to marry any knight who had not as great renown in arms as her father. You shall not for that refuse me, said he ; before three days you shall know that I am as doughty as he. And he took his arms and rode to the tree, and finding Antebon on foot and without his shield and helmet, which were lying by him, smote him through the neck with his spear ; and after he had fallen dead, mangled his head as you behold. We therefore have laid him in that same place, being a continual passage for knights errant, to try if any would be so honourably provoked as to revenge him, when they had heard how treacherously he was slain. *But why was he left alone ?* said Galaor.—The mur-

derer had sent to threaten the four squires who always remained by him, and for this cause they had forsaken the body, and we afterwards removed it. It has cost me much that I did not see you, quoth Galaor. Are you he then, whom we saw sleeping upon his shield?—The same.—And why were you tarrying there?—To revenge the dead, if his death rightfully demanded it.—Ah, good knight! God in his mercy prosper the attempt! And the old man led him to the bed, and bade them all cease their lamentations; For here, said he to the dame, is a knight who will avenge us. And she fell at his feet to kiss them. God reward thee, thou good knight, for he is a stranger in this land, and hath no kin to take vengeance. For that, said Galaor, am I the more eager, seeing I am of the same country. But he is a perilous knight, said she. Fear not, quoth Galaor, let me be shewn the place; and, if it please you, provide me a horse. That, answered the lady, I shall do on the condition that if you revenge me, the horse be returned. Galaor replied, So let it be.

CHAP. XXVI.—How Don Galaor compleated his adventure.

ALAOR was then conducted by two damsels to a castle in a forest, seated upon a rock, where the murderer Palingues dwelt. He called at the gate, and a knight appeared above it, demanding what he wanted.—To enter the castle.—This gate is only used to let those out who are within. I will show you how to enter; but I fear my labour will be lost, for you will not have courage. So help me God as I will go in! quoth Galaor.—Alight, then, and go to the foot of that tower.

Presently that knight appeared again upon the tower, and another greater than himself completely armed; and they two winding a winch about, let down a basket by a cord, saying, This is the way in. Will ye promise to draw me up in safety? said Galaor. —Yea, truly; but afterwards we will not warrant you. Wind up, then, quoth he, I take your word! and he placed himself in the basket. God protect thee, thou gentle knight, cried the damsels, for thou hast a good heart! They drew him safely up, and he leapt from the basket. Then said they, Knight, you must swear to defend the Lord of this castle against those who challenge him for Antebon's death, else you shall never depart. What! quoth Galaor, did one of you twain kill him?—Why demand you?—That I may make him know the great treason he hath therein committed. The knights answered, How canst thou be such a fool to threaten us, being in our power? and then drawing their swords they laid upon him furiously. He seeing himself in peril, for they were two perilous knights, made no trifling. Ah God, quoth the damsels below, hark! what a battle! what will become of our champion?—presently the two knights were thrown from the tower, and Galaor called to them, Look if either of these be Palingues. You have so handled them, sir, quoth they, that it is not easy to know, but we believe neither of these is he. Then Galaor descended the tower, and entering a large hall beheld a fair damsel, and she was exclaiming, Palingues! why flyest thou? art thou so brave in arms as to slay my father in battle, and wilt thou not meet this knight? At these words Galaor looked round, and espied a knight well armed, endeavouring to open the door of another tower. He ran to him,—Palingues, fly or fight; you

shall not escape ! The traitor seeing no choice turned to battle, and fiercely smote at Galaor, his sword entering so deep into the shield that he could not draw it back. But Galaor with one blow cut off his arm, and overtaking him with a second as he fled, cleft him to the teeth : Take this for thy treason to Antebon ! When the damsel heard her father's name, and saw the vengeance, she came and blest the knight for what he had done. On my faith, fair friend, quoth he, he deserves shame who would wrong one like you ! but tell me, are there any more to combat ?—None but servants are left, who are ready to obey you.—Let the gate be opened then for your mother's damsels, who led me here. Great joy did they make when they saw their young mistress for her deliverance.

When Galaor had laid aside his shield and helmet, they were astonished to see one so young and beautiful ; and Brandueta ran to her deliverer and embraced him :—My honourable lord and friend, more cause have I to love you than any other living ! tell me who you are ?—They call me Galaor.—God be thanked that Antebon is revenged by such a knight ! my father often rejoiced in your fame, and in that of your brother Amadis, for he said you were the sons of King Perion, his liege lord ; and it was for fear of ye, as Antebon's countrymen, that Palingues so fearfully kept his castle. That night they returned to her mother's castle ; and Brandueta so requited his services, that Galaor did not regret the Duke of Bristol's niece.

CHAP. XXVII.—How Amadis delivered the damsel from the knight who mistreated her, and how afterwards when he was sleeping another knight carried her away.

SUCH speed made Amadis, that, having overthrown the knight who would have known whither he went, he overtook him who misused the damsel, and cried to him, Sir knight, you have been committing great wrong: I pray you do so no more.—What wrong?—The shamefullest that could be devised, in striking that damsel.—And you are come to chastise me?—Not so: but to counsel you for your own good. It will be more for yours to turn back as you came, said the knight.—Thereat was Amadis angered: and he went to the squire and said, Let go the damsel, or thou diest! and the squire in fear put her down. Sir knight, you shall dearly abide this, quoth his master. Amadis answered, We shall see! and ran his career and drove him from his saddle, and was about to ride over him, but he cried out for mercy!—Swear then never to wrong dame or damsel. And, as he approached to receive the oath, the traitor stabbed his horse. Amadis recovered from the fall, and with one blow paid him for the treason.

The damsel then besought him to compleat his courtesy by accompanying her to a castle whither she was going. He took the horse of the slain, and they went on together, and by the way he learnt from her the history of Antebon. About midnight they came to a river-side, and, because the damsel would fain sleep, they stopt. Amadis spread Gandalin's cloak for her bed, and he laid his head upon his helmet, and they all slept. There came up a knight as they were sleeping, and he seeing the damsel, gently wakened

her with the end of his lance. She seeing an armed knight, thought it was Amadis, and said, Do you wish us to depart? He answered, It is time! In God's name then, quoth she; and, being still drowsy, she suffered the stranger to place her before him; but then recollecting, What is this? she cried: the squire should have carried me. And when she saw it was a stranger, she shrieked out and called to Amadis, Let not a stranger carry me off! But the knight clapt spurs to his horse, and galloped away.

Amadis awoke at her voice, and called to Gandalin for his horse, and pursued full speed till he entered a thicket and lost the track. Then albeit he were the mildest knight in the world; he was sorely wroth against himself. The damsel may well report, thought he, that I have done her as much wrong as succour; for, if I saved her from one ravisher, I have suffered her to be stolen by another. So he rode about, wearying his horse, till at length he heard a horn, and followed the sound, and came to a strong castle set upon a hill, walled high, and with strong towers, and the gate was shut. The watchman saw him, and called out to know what man was there at such an hour, and what he sought. A knight, quoth Amadis, who hath stolen a damsel from me.—We have seen none such. Then Amadis went round the castle, and in another part he found an open postern, and saw the knight on foot, and his men unsaddling the horse, who could not else pass through. Stop, sir knight, quoth Amadis, and tell me if you have taken my damsel?—You took no care to keep her.—You stole her from me in a way neither courteous nor knightly. Friend! quoth the knight, she came with me by her own will; I offered her no force, and here I have

her. Shew me the damsel, said Amadis, and, if she says the same, I will rest contented.—To-morrow you shall see her, here within, if you will enter upon the custom of the castle.—What is the custom?—I will not now tell you, for it is night : if you wait till morning you may know. And he then shut the postern. So Amadis passed the remainder of the night under the trees.

When the sun was up he saw the gate open, and riding up to it saw an armed knight in the gateway, and the porter with him, who asked Amadis if he would enter? Why have I tarried here else? answered Amadis. First then, said the porter, you must hear our custom that you may not complain of it hereafter : if you enter here, you must do combat with this knight, and if he get the victory you must swear to obey the command of the lady of this castle, otherwise you will be cast into a miserable prison ; if the victory be yours, you will find two other knights at the next gate, and farther in three more ; with all these you must fight under the same condition ; but, if you bear away the honour in these attempts, not only will it be great renown of prowess, but right shall be done in whatsoever you demand. Dear terms! cried Amadis : but I must see the damsel. The first champion encountered him to his cost. Amadis held his lance to him as he lay on the ground, Yield or die ! The knight cried, Mercy ! and shewed a broken arm : then he of Gaul rode on. The two who kept the next pass ran at him ; the one missed his blow, the other he drove down, all stunned, breaking his lance in his shield ; then, with the truncheon of his lance, he smote the one who was on horseback, *so that the helmet came off : both drew their swords.*

Knight, quoth Amadis, it is folly to continue the combat bare-headed ! Look to thine own head ! was the answer ; but Amadis staggered him with one stroke, then with the side of the sword struck his head as he was reeling, Knight, it had been gone, if I had laid on with the edge ! And after this victory he past on.

There within he saw dames and damsels on the wall, and heard them say, if this knight pass the bridge in despite of the three, he will have done a most rare feat of chivalry. Presently there came out three knights, well armed on goodly coursers ; Yield, said they, or swear to perform our lady's will. I am not yet won, quoth Amadis ; and for the lady's will, I know not what it may be. With that there began a fierce battle, for the three of the castle were hardy knights, practised in arms, and he whom they encountered was not one that would leave off with shame. Amadis so displayed himself, that his antagonists, no longer able for many wounds and great loss of blood to sustain him, took to flight. The one he overtook and made him yield, the other twain he followed into the hall ; there stood at the door thereof about twenty dames and damsels, and the fairest of them all said to him, Hold, sir knight, you have done enough. Lady, let them own themselves vanquished.—Wherefore ? how have they wronged you ?—I was told to slay or conquer them before I could obtain my demand.—They told you if you could penetrate here by force you should obtain it : say then what you would have.—A damsel, whom a knight stole from me while I slept, and has brought hither. I pray you, sir, replied the lady, rest while I send for the knight to answer you.

Then he alighted, and the lady sate down by him, and asked him if he knew a knight called Amadis ?—

Why ask you ?—Because all the guard you found in this castle was appointed for his sake ; if he entered here, he should never depart till he revoked a promise which he has made.—What might it have been ?—I will tell you, if you will promise by arms or otherwise to make him revoke it, for it is an injustice.—Lady, whatever Amadis hath so promised, I will with my utmost power make him discharge. Sir knight, quoth she, this Amadis promised Angriote of Estravaus to procure his lady's liking to him : this was ill done, for love should be of liking, not of force. Certes, lady, you say true, and that promise will I make him release, said Amadis ; no less glad for what had past than the lady, though for another cause. Belike then, you are that lady whom Angriote so loveth ?—The same.—Of a truth, I hold him for one of the best knights living, and methinks there is no lady, however honourable, who might not pride herself to have such a servant as he. I do not say this to recal the word which I have given you, but because he is a better knight than he who gave him that promise.

CHAP. XXVIII.—How Amadis fought with the knight who had stolen away the damsel, and conquered him.



WHILE they were thus devising there came in another knight, large limbed and strong, compleatly armed, except his head and hands. Sir knight, quoth he to Amadis, they tell me you claim a damsel whom I brought here : I did not force her from you ; she chose to come with me, rather than remain with you, therefore it is no reason that I should resign her.—Shew me then the damsel.—Y

no reason that I should ; if you say otherwise, I am ready to do battle. Now the name of this knight was Gasinan, uncle to Grovenesa, the lady of the castle ; and she, who loved him the best of all his kin, and was altogether governed by his counsel, for he was the best knight of his race, said to him, I pray you, uncle, forbear this difference, for if ill befall either of you it will be to my loss : you are my best friend, and he hath sworn to make Amadis revoke his promise to Angriote. Niece, quoth Gasinan, neither he nor any other can make the best knight in the world revoke his promise ; and for this quarrel, so help me God, as I will not give up the damsel ! They gave spurs to their horses and met ; their spears brake, their shields and breasts encountered, and Gasinan fell : yet he arose quickly, and drawing his sword stood by a strong pillar in the midst of the court, thinking Amadis could little endamage him, while he was on horseback, and as Amadis drew nigh, he struck at the head of his horse ; but he of Gaul, moved to anger thereby, made a blow at him with his sword, which fell upon the pillar, and cut away a fragment thereof, though the stone was very hard, but the sword brake in three pieces. Seeing in what danger he was, he leaped from his horse ; and Gasinan came at him, saying, Confess the damsel to be mine, or thou art but dead ! That, quoth Amadis, shall I never do, till she tell me it be with her good will. And with his shield he warily received the blows that fell fast upon him, and at times smote at Gasinan with his broken sword, so that he twisted the helmet on his head, and made him often give back. The battle lasted long, to the great peril of Amadis, for his shield was cut away and his harness laid open in sundry places ; he, knowing his

danger, ran suddenly upon Gasinan and grappled with him, and dashed him against the pillar, so as for a moment to stun him and make him drop his sword, which Amadis quickly seized, and cut the laces of his helmet, saying, Sir knight, you have handled me hardly and wrongfully, now will I be revenged ! and he lifted his sword as if to slay him. Seeing that, Grovenesa cried aloud, mercy, good knight, and she ran towards him ; but he seeing her fear, made the more semblance of anger, saying, He hath so wronged me that I must have his head. For God's sake, quoth she, ask any thing else that he may live ! Give me, my damsel, then, said he, and swear that you will go to the first court which King Lisuarte shall hold, and there grant me what I shall ask. Swear it, niece ! cried Gasinan, who had now recovered speech : and suffer me not to be slain ! and upon that Grovenesa made the oath. Lady, then, quoth Amadis, I shall faithfully observe my promise to you : hold you yours, and fear not that I shall ask ought against your honour. Then was the damsel sent for, and she kneeling to Amadis, said, Truly, sir, great pains have you taken for my sake ; and Gasinan, though he stole me, must love me well, since he preferred to fight rather than deliver me. As God shall help me, fair damsel, cried Gasinan, if you think so you think rightly : I beseech you stay with me. That will I do, willingly, she answered, if it please this good knight. Amadis replied, Certes, you have chosen one of the best knights in the world ; but if this be not with your free will, speak now, that I may not be blamed hereafter. She answered, I thank you truly that you let me remain. In God's name, quoth he. Then *albeit* he was greatly intreated to abide there that

night, he would depart to rejoin Galaor ; and mounting horse, he bade Gandalin take with him the pieces of his sword. Hearing that, Gasinan besought him to accept his weapon ; which, having thankfully accepted, and a lance also from Grovenesa, he rode away.

CHAP. XXIX.—How Balays atchieved his adventure.

BALAYS of Carsante followed the knight who had driven Galaor's horse astray, so fast as possibly he could. The darkness overtook him, nevertheless he rode on till midnight, when he heard voices by a river side, and shaping his course thither he found five thieves dragging a damsel by the hair, with design to force her, and they were all armed in corslets and with hatchets. Balays crying out upon their villainy, ran at them and broke his spear in the body of one, so that he fell down dead. Then the other four beset him sharply, and slew his horse ; but he lightly clearing himself, cleft one to the neck with a sword stroke, and suffering his sword to hang by the chain, caught at the fellow's hatchet and pursued the others, who fled before him along a narrow path into a quagmire, where they had a great fire, and there they turned upon him, for they could fly no farther. He drove his hatchet through the ribs of one, and with another blow made the fourth fall into the fire ; the other one fell upon his knees, Mercy, for God's sake, and do not destroy me body and soul ! Since thou seest thy crime, repent it, and amend thy life ! said Balays ; and the thief performed his promise, for from that time he was a good man, and led a good life, and became a hermit.

Balays then returned to the damsel, and when he saw how fair she was, he said to her, Certes, fair lady, had your beauty so taken these fellows as it hath me, they would never have suffered you to depart. Sir knight, replied the damsel, had those thieves forced me to their desires, both God and the world might hold me excused; contrariwise, if I should willingly grant your unhonourable request, I neither could nor ought to be pardoned: hitherto you have shown yourself a good knight, let me entreat you to accompany prowess in arms with continence and virtue, as by duty you are bound. My good lady, Balays answered, think no more of what I said: it becomes knights to serve damsels, and to woo their love, and it becomes them to deny as you have done; and albeit at the first we think it much to obtain of them what we desire, yet when wisely and discreetly they resist our inordinate appetites, keeping that, without which they are worthy of no praise, they be even of ourselves more revered and commended. She kissed his hand, and answered, For this reason I thank you more for saving my honour than my life.—Then they left that place where the dead men lay, and coming to a pleasant meadow rested there till it was day; and then Balays armed himself, and mounted the damsel's palfrey, because his own horse was slain, and taking her behind him, rode on, for she had desired him to leave her in some habitation, as he could by no means abandon his quest.

As thus they rode on communing together, they saw a knight coming towards them having one leg upon the horse's neck, but drawing nearer he put foot in stirrup, and couched his lance against Balays, and *threw him and the damsel from the palfrey.* Mistress

said he then to the damsel, I am sorry for your fall, but I will take you where amends shall be made: this fellow is not worthy to carry you. By this Balays had risen and recognized the knight, and making at him shield and sword in hand, he cried, Don Cavalier, you rode on more than apace after driving my horse astray: by God's help you shall pay by daylight, for your night-knavery! What! quoth the other, you are one of those who laughed at me: it is my turn now! And he drove at him with his spear so fiercely that the shield was pierced; but Balays with one blow cut the spear from his hand. The knight then drew his sword, and struck upon his helmet, and the sword went in two fingers' depth. Balays took the occasion, and caught his enemy's shield, and drew him with such force toward him that the saddle came round and he fell, and he cut the laces of his helmet, and buffeted his head with the sword-hilt till he stunned him, and taking his sword broke it against a stone. Then he placed the damsel on her palfrey, and mounted the knight's horse, and rode toward the tree at the cross-way.

That night they were lodged by two women of holy life, who gave them such poor cheer as they could, and blessed Sir Balays for ridding the country of the thieves who had long infested it. Thence they proceeded to the cross-way, where they found Amadis, and had not tarried long before Galaor came up. So having conducted the damsel to her father's castle, where they were honourably entreated, they continued their way to Windsor.

CHAP. XXX.—How King Lisuarte held a Cortes and of what happened there.

KING LISUARTE was so content with the tidings of Amadis and Galaor, which the dwarf had brought him, that he determined to hold the most honourable court that ever had been held in Great Britain. At this time Olivas made his appeal of treason against the Duke of Bristol, for the death of his cousin; and the king, with the advice of those who were best versed in these forms, summoned the duke to answer within a month, and if he would justify his cause with two knights beside himself, Olivas should produce other two their equals to maintain his accusation. This done, the court was proclaimed for the day of our Lady in September.

One day when they were all assembled in the palace, and devising together of the festival, a strange damsel, well attired and accompanied by a gentle page, entered, and dismounted from her palfrey, and asked which was the king. Lisuarte answered, he was the man. In sooth, my lord, she replied, you seem like a king in your port and countenance, but I know not whether you be so in heart. Damsel, quoth he, you see the one, and shall be satisfied when you prove the other. She answered, You speak as I desire; remember, therefore, what you have promised before so many great persons, for when you hold your court in London, on St. Mary's day, I shall put you to the proof. So took she leave of him, returning the way she came. All present were much troubled at the rash promise which he had made to a strange damsel, knowing that for no fear would he leave to perform it, and doubting *that some ill was designed him.*

Presently three knights came through the gate, two of them armed at all points, the third unarmed, of good stature and well proportioned, his hair grey, but of a green and comely old age. He held in his hand a coffer, and having enquired which was the king, dismounted from his palfrey and knelt before him, saying, God preserve you, sir ! for you have made the noblest promise that ever king did, if you hold it. What promise was that ? quoth Lisuarte—To maintain chivalry in its highest honour and degree : few princes now a days labour to that end, therefore are you to be commended above all other.—Certes, knight, that promise shall I hold while I live. God grant you life to compleat it ! quoth the old man, and because you have summoned a great court to London, I have brought something here which becomes such a person for such an occasion. Then he opened the coffer, and took out a crown of gold, so curiously wrought and set with pearls and gems, that all were amazed at its beauty, and it well appeared that it was only fit for the brow of some mighty lord. Is it not a work which the most cunning artists would wonder at ? said the old knight. Lisuarte answered, In truth it is. Yet, said the knight, it hath a virtue more to be esteemed than its rare work and richness ; whatever king hath it on his head, shall always increase his honour ; this it did for him for whom it was made till the day of his death, since then no king hath worn it : I will give it you, sir, for one boon, which will save my head that is now in danger to be lost. The queen hearing this, exclaimed, Truly, my lord, such a jewel well becomes you : give any thing for it that the knight may ask. You also, lady, said the knight, should purchase a rich mantle that I bring ;—and he took from the coffer the

richest and most beautiful mantle that ever was seen ; for, besides the pearls and precious stones wherewith it was beautified, there were figured upon it all the birds and beasts in nature, so that it looked like a miracle. On my faith, exclaimed the queen, this cloth can only have been made by that Lord who can do everything. It is the work of man, said the old knight, but rarely will one be found to make its fellow ; it should belong to wife rather than maiden, for she that weareth it shall never have dispute with her husband. Brisena answered, If that be true, it is above all price ; I will give you for it whatever you ask : and Lisuarte bade him demand what he would for the mantle and the crown. The old man answered, I must go, to my sorrow, to him whose prisoner I am, and have now no time to stay, nor to consider what their worth should be, but I will be with you at your court in London ; till then, keep you the crown, and you my lady queen the mantle : if you do not accept my terms, you shall restore them ; but, having proved their virtue, you will be ready to pay me more than now. Lisuarte replied, We will either give you what you ask, or restore the crown and mantle. Knights and ladies all ! quoth the old man, you hear what the king and queen promise ! that they will restore to me my crown and mantle, or give me what I shall ask ! They answered, we all hear ! The old man then took his leave, saying, I go to the worst prison that ever man had ! One of the armed knights took off his helmet while he was there, and appeared young and sufficiently comely ; the other would not unhelm himself, but held down his head, and he was of such overgreat stature that no knight in court could equal him

by a foot. So they three departed, and the crown and mantle were left with the king.

CHAP. XXXI.—How Amadis and Don Galaor and Balays of Carsante arrived at the palace of King Lisuarte, and Galaor remained as the king's knight.



MADIS, Galaor, and Balays, continued their course till they reached the house of King Lisuarte, and so great was the general desire to see them that scarcely could they make way thro' the thronged streets, or enter the palace. They were soon disarmed; and, when the two brethren were seen, how fair they were, and of what young years, all who beheld them cursed Arcalaus for the heart he had to devise their deaths. Forthwith the king led them to Brisena's chamber; when Amadis past the door and beheld Oriana, his heart leaped; and she who, albeit the tidings of his safety had reached her, still feared he was dead because of her exceeding love, could not now refrain from tears, and lingered behind her mother to controul that passionate feeling. But Amadis, taking his brother by the hand, knelt before Brisena and said, Here, lady, is the knight whom you bade me seek. She answered, And he is right welcome! and then embraced the brethren. Madam, quoth Lisuarte, you should divide them with me; as Amadis is your knight, give me Galaor for mine. She answered, Never yet was so great a boon granted in Britain! but you deserve it, being the noblest of all her kings: what say you, sir Galaor? will you be the king's knight? Galaor replied, 'Methinks whatever so great a king demandeth should

be granted : you have me here to obey you in this and every other respect, so far as it be with the will of my lord and brother Amadis, for I will do nothing against his command. I am well pleased, quoth she, that you will obey him, for he is mine. I beseech you, brother, then, said Amadis, do what the queen desires ; and Galaor then bade her dispose of him as she would. My lord, quoth she, I give you Don Galaor, and I beseech you love him as he deserves.

The king then seated himself by Brisena, and they talked with Galaor. Mabilia, who was apart with Oriana and Olinda, because they three were the noblest damsels, seeing Amadis with Agrayes, called to her brother, and bade him bring that knight nearer, for they greatly desired to see him. They then came up, and she knowing what remedies their hearts required, placed Agrayes beside Olinda and Amadis by Oriana, and being herself in the middle, said, Now am I between the four persons in the world whom I love best. When Amadis saw himself near his lady his heart leaped. She welcomed him, and putting out her hands between the lace of her mantle, took his hands and pressed them as if she would have embraced him, and said, My friend, what agony that traitor made me endure ! Never was woman in such danger, and certes never with such reason ; for never had any one so great a loss as I should suffer in losing you ; for as I am better beloved than all others, so is it my good fortune to be beloved by him who excels all others. Amadis, who heard himself thus praised, could make no reply, for so beautiful did she appear that the words died upon his lips ; but she whose eyes were fixed upon him said, Dear friend, how should I not love you above all others, for all love and

you, and you love me ; reason is it then that better than all other I should love you. Lady, then, replied Amadis, I beseech you rather pity the death which I daily endure for your sake ! that which they told you had befallen me would be my consolation and rest : were it not for the strong desire my heart has to serve you, that heart could not resist its sorrows, but would sink under them ; not that I fail to confess that one thought from you repays my pain, but something more is required, and without which it will soon bring me to my end. And then the tears started in his eyes. Dear friend, said Oriana, for God's sake talk not of your death ! it makes my heart sink, for I could not live an hour after you, and only desire to live for you. What you say I well believe, loving as much as you do ; and let come what will I promise you, that if fortune offer us no means of rest, my weak courage shall find one, though the displeasure of my father and mother should follow, which would be more endurable than these fears and this suspense. Amadis could not answer ; but he sighed from his heart. She took his hand,—Friend, I will perform this promise ; meantime do not quit the court. At this time the queen called to Amadis, and made him sit near Galaor. The dames and damsels of the court meantime talked only of the two brethren, how God had made them as surpassing in beauty as in deeds of arms and all goodness : they thought Galaor of the fairer complexion ; but Amadis had crisp, auburn locks, and more colour in his face, and was the larger limbed. When the tables were ready, Amadis and Galaor were placed at one table by the king's command, with Galvanes Lackland and Agraves, and no others ; and as these four knights had sate at the same board, so afterwards did they

partake of many the same dangers ; and although Don Galvanes was akin to none of them except Agrayes, yet Amadis and Galaor always called him uncle, and he called them his nephews, whereby his honour was afterwards greatly increased.

CHAP. XXXII.—How King Lisuarte ordained his Cortes to be held in London.



AS it had pleased God to make Lisuarte, of a prince who had no heritage, king of Great Britain, and to give him the greatest glory and prosperity that man could wish, so now, lest his heart should wax proud and be corrupted, his peace was to be disturbed. He sent forth his summons to hold the court on the fifth day at London, a city which then was like an eagle above all the rest of Christendom, that they might take order for the advancement of chivalry ; but there, where he thought all the world would yield him obeisance, began the first change of fortune, and his kingdom and person were put in danger of utter ruin.

King Lisuarte with all his chivalry departed from Windsor to the court, and the queen with all her dames and damsels. The assembly was wonderfully great ; young knights costily armed and adorned, and infantas who were king's daughters, and damsels of high degree, for whom their lovers were about to make pastime and pleasure. That they might not lodge in the city, the king ordered pavilions to be pitched in the plain by the brooks and fountains that abound in that land. Here led they the happiest life that could be imagined. To this court there came a great lord

more noble in estate and rank than in the dignity of virtue, Barsinan, lord of Sansuena ; not that he was vassal or friend to king Lisuarte, nor even known to him, but for this cause.

He being in his own land, Arcalaus the Enchanter came to him and said, Lord Barsinan, if you like it, I will so contrive, that with little difficulty or labour you shall become King of Great Britain. Barsinan answered, I should gladly undergo any labour or difficulty for such a reward.—Promise then, to make me* chief of your household for life, and the thing shall be done.—That will I right willingly ; but how shall it be done ? In this manner, quoth Arcalaus : Go you with a good company of knights to the first court that King Lisuarte shall hold. I will contrive to carry away the king prisoner, so that no person shall be able to succour him, and at the same time I will give you his daughter Oriana to wife. In five days' time I will send Lisuarte's head to London ; then do you, having the heiress to the throne in your power, take the occasion and seize the crown.

With this design came Barsinan to the court, where he was honourably entertained, and albeit his heart failed him, and he almost repented of the enterprise, seeing the great power of knighthood that was with Lisuarte, yet determined he to abide the end. But Lisuarte, nothing misdoubting him, to do him the greater honour gave him his own palace, and pitched tents for himself and for the queen in the fields, and consulted with him upon the business of that court, how he might best advance chivalry. To this effect the next day was appointed for council. When morning came, the king clad himself in royal robes, befitting

* Mayordomo mayor.

the solemnity, and sent for the crown which the old knight had left him, and desired the Queen to attire herself in the mantle. She opened the coffer wherein they were laid, with the key which she always kept herself, and found nothing therein, whereat she was greatly amazed; and crossed herself and sent to inform the king. He, albeit he was much troubled, dissembled his chagrin, and going to the queen took her apart and said, how, Madam, have you kept so ill a thing of such value? Sir, she replied, I know not what to say: the coffer was locked, and the key, which I have never trusted from me, in my own possession; but I dreamt last night that a damsel came and asked me to shew her the coffer, which in my sleep I did, and she demanded the key and I gave it her; and she opened the coffer and took out the crown and mantle, then fastened it again and replaced the key. And she clad herself in the mantle and put on the crown, which so well became her that I had great delight in looking at her; and she said to me, He and she whose these shall be, before five days end shall reign in the realm of the mighty one who now labours to defend it, and to conquer the lands of others. I asked her of whom she spake. She answered, You will know at that time. And then she vanished, taking with her the crown and mantle; but I know not whether this happened to me in a dream, or in very deed. At this the king marvelled greatly, and charged her that she should tell no one.

Then leaving that tent they both went to the other, accompanied by so many knights, and dames and damsels, that all who saw them wondered. The king seated himself upon a rich seat, and the queen on another somewhat below him, both of which

placed upon carpets of cloth of gold ; the knights ranged themselves on the king's side, and the ladies on the side of the queen. The four knights whom the king most esteemed, were nearest him, Amadis, Galaor, Galvanes, and Agraves ; at his back was King Arban of North Wales, armed at all points, and holding a drawn sword, and with him were two hundred knights. In this order, all being silent, there stood up a lady, exceeding fair, and richly garmented ; and there arose with her at the same time twelve dames and damsels, attired with like bravery and the same adornments ; for this custom had the ladies and chiefs of high degree to take with them to such solemnities their followers, apparelled like their own proper persons. This lady with this attendance stood up before the king and queen, and addressing Lisuarte she said, Sire, hear me ! I have a claim against this knight,—stretching forth her hand towards Amadis. She continued, and related how Angriote of Estravaus had sought her love, and why he kept the vale of pines, and how Amadis, having forced the pass, had promised to procure for him his mistress's favour. Whereof, quoth she, when I attained knowledge, I withdrew myself to my castle, where I kept such a strong guard and custom, that it was thought no strange knight could enter ; nevertheless this knight entered who is at your feet,—pointing to Amadis whom she knew not. He afterward of his good will promised to make Amadis revoke his word to Angriote : but then there chanced a combat between him and mine Uncle Garsinan ; and all eyes were fixed upon Garsinan while she related how the battle had been, marvelling that he should have dared do battle with Amadis.—And

here, sir, said she, am I come to claim his promise, and discharge my own.

When she had ended, Amadis arose and said, What the lady hath said is true, and I promise to make Amadis revoke his word to Angriote: let her also grant the covenanted boon. Thereat in great joy she exclaimed, ask what you will! What I demand is, quoth he, that you marry Angriote, and love him even as he loveth you. Holy Mary, help me! she exclaimed: what is this? Fair lady, replied he, it is that you should wed a knight deserving one of your birth and beauty.—But your promise?—It is performed: I revoke my word to Angriote, for I am Amadis! but I claim the performance of your's; so give I you to him, and keep my faith with both. Sir, quoth she, to the king, is this Amadis indeed? Without doubt. Ah wretch, she cried, it is vain for mortal man to avoid what God hath decreed! it was for no dislike nor misesteem that I refused Sir Angriote, but because being free I would have preserved my single liberty; and now, when I thought myself safely separated, I am thus put in his power. Then said Lisuarte, as God shall help me, fair lady, you have great reason to rejoice; for, as you are fair and of high degree, so is he young and of great prowess; and, as you are rich in possessions, so is he in all goodness: great reason is there then in such a marriage, and so it must appear to all. Grovenesa turned to the queen, You, my lady queen, whom God has made one of the best and wisest princesses in the world, what do you say to me?—That Angriote deserves the love of any lady. Trust me, quoth Amadis, my promise to Angriote was made neither by chance, nor for any undue favour to him, but because having to my danger

proved his worth in arms, I felt myself bound to remedy as far as I could his extreme passion for you, and your little regard toward him. I must yield, quoth Grovenesa ; and, after all that has been said, it were folly not to be well pleased. Sir Angriote, quoth Amadis, here is your lady : I perform my word on condition that the marriage be performed without delay. The king commanded the Bishop of Salerno to go with them to his chapel, and give them the blessings of the church. Forthwith Angriote and his bride with all their lineage went into the city, and there was the marriage ceremony with all solemnity performed ; and, we may say, that all this had been so ordered to requite Angriote for his great courtesy and forbearance towards this lady when he had her in his power.

CHAP. XXXIII.—How when the Cortes was assembled King Lisuarte asked counsel of his knights concerning what he ought to do.

KING Lisuarte remaining with his chiefs thus bespake them : Friends ! since God hath made me more rich in dominion and in subjects than any of the kings my neighbours, reason it is that for his service I should perform more praiseworthy things than they : tell me then how I may best promote my honour and advancement together with your own, and what shall seem best that will I do. Then Barsinan, Lord of Sansuena, arose and said, Ye have heard, sirs, the king's charge : I should hold it good that if he pleased he would leave ye, that ye might the more freely deliver each his opinion ; and, afterwards, he may follow that which

most accords with his own. The king replied that he said well, and therewith departed into another tent.

Then Serolys the Fleming, who was Count of Clara, began in this manner : Sirs, it is manifest that men in this world can only become powerful by strengthening themselves with men and money ; but the money should be employed in procuring men, for by men must kingdoms be defended and won. Other counsel than this, sirs, the king will not take ; to seek good knights from all parts, and love and cherish and honour and reward them with his bounty, so that strangers shall seek him for the fame thereof. They alone have been fortunate and mighty who have thus strengthened themselves with the aid of famous knights, distributing treasures to them, and acquiring by their aid greater treasures, the spoils of others. This advice was well liked of by all, except Barsinan, whom it troubled, because if that were followed he should hardly effect the purpose for which he came. Certes, said he, I never saw many so good men yield so foolishly at a word ! If your lord were to do as the Count of Clara hath proposed, before two years were at an end, the king would have given to strangers what else would have been given among you, and you would be neglected and of no account, while his favours would naturally be bestowed upon them, being newly come : look ye well to this ! it concerns not me ; only that I shall rejoice if my advice should be found profitable. Some there were, envious and greedy men, who were of this mind, so that there arose a contention, and it was agreed that the king should come and decide. But he seeing the thing clearly before his eyes, said thus : Kings are powerful not for *the much*, but for the *many* at their command. With

his own person what can he do? less perhaps than another man. Can he govern his estates with that? you can answer me.* Can his treasures lighten him of that care? not unless they are well expended: it is plain then that human wisdom and human strength are the real treasures. By this liberality have the noblest chiefs been made famous, the great Alexander, the mighty Julius Cæsar, the haughty Hannibal. Good friends, therefore, not only do I think it best to seek the service of good knights, but I beseech ye all to assist me in the search, and bring them to my court, that I being the more honoured in foreign parts, your honour may also be the greater: and be ye sure that I never shall forget old friends for new; and let me know the best who are come to my court, that we may have them in our company before they depart. This accordingly was done, and the king having the list, summoned them all before him after his meal, and besought them to enter loyally into his service, and not to quit his court without his permission, and he on his part promised to honour and reward them.

To this all who were present agreed, excepting Amadis, for he was the queen's knight. This done, the queen requested them to hear her, for if it pleased them she would speak. They all drew near her in silence, and she said to the king, Since you, my lord, have so favoured and honoured your knights, reasonable it is that I should do the like to my dames and damsels, and for their sake to all others wheresoever they be; therefore, I beg a boon of you and of these good men, for in festivals like these good boons ought to be asked and granted. Lisuarte looked round his company,—Friends, what answer shall we make the queen? They all answered, Grant her what

she may demand. What else, quoth Galaor, but to obey so excellent a lady? Then said the king, seeing you are all content, let the boon be granted, how weighty soever it may be to perform. And they all answered, so be it! The boon I ask is this, said Brisena, that ye always defend dames and damsels from all wrong; and if by chance you have made promise of two suits, one to a man, the other to a woman, you shall accomplish the woman's request first, as being the weakest person, and who hath most need to be holpen. Thus shall women travel more safely along the highways, and discourteous and cruel men shall fear to offer them force or injury. Greatly were Lisuarte and all his knights contented with that request, and the king commanded that it should be observed, as it long was in Great Britain, never knight breaking it; but how it was at last broken, is not to the purpose here to say.

CHAP. XXXIV.—How King Lisuarte being in great pleasure a damsel covered with mourning humbled herself before him to beg a boon, the which was by him granted.



WHILE King Lisuarte was with such company in such pleasure, there came in a fair damsel clad in mourning, who falling on her knees before him, said, All here, sir, have joy but me, and I have grief and wretchedness, and only you can relieve me! Friend, quoth the king, how may that be?—My father and uncle are in the prison of a lady, who will never deliver them till they give her two knights each as good in arms as one whom they have slain. Wherefore did they slay him? Because he *vaur* that he alone could combat with them both, and?

them with such insolence, that they were compelled by shame to enter lists with him, and so he was slain. This was before the Castle of Guldenda, who immediately made my father and uncle prisoners, for that knight was engaged to wage a battle for her, and she swore never to release them till they gave her two other knights for that service, each as approved in arms. Know you not, said Lisuarte, where the battle is to be fought? She answered, I cannot tell : I only know my father and uncle are unjustly cast into prison, and none of their kin can help them. And with that she began to lament bitterly, so that the king, moved with pity, answered, Is the castle far from hence? You may go and return in five days, quoth she. Then said Lisuarte, chuse two knights, and take them with you. Sir, quoth she, I am of a strange land, and know none of them : if it please you, I will go to the queen my lady and ask her counsel.

The damsel repeated her tale to Brisena, and asked her to name two knights. O damsel? quoth the Queen, you ask me what I ought to do, but I am loth to forego the twain. Then she called for Amadis and Galaor : this knight, said she, is mine ; the other is the king's ; they are the best knights here or elsewhere, Amadis and Galaor. What ! quoth the damsel? are you Sir Amadis? the knight that hath no peer? now shall I of a certainty accomplish what I desire, if you and your brother will accompany me. Lady, for God's sake intreat them for me ! The queen used her intreaties, but Amadis looked at Oriana for her permission ; and she dropt her gloves in token that he should go, for that sign had been agreed on between them, and she had compassion on the damsel. Then

he replied, that he would perform the queen's command. But Brisena commanded them to hasten back without delay, let what would happen. Then Amadis approached Mabilia and Oriana, as if to take leave of his cousin, and Oriana said, dear friend, I repent the leave I have given you ; my heart misgives me : God grant that it be for good ! Lady, quoth Amadis, may he who made you so fair, always give you much joy ! wherever I may be, I am still yours to serve you. I commend you to God's good keeping, she replied : may he preserve and give you glory above all other knights ! They then armed themselves, and took their leave, and departed with the damsel.

She guided them till it was past noon, and they entered a forest which was called the Forest of Ill Fortune, for never errant knight entered it without mishap ; nor did these brethren escape without sore suffering. They ate of what their squires carried, and proceeded on till night : it was broad moon-light, and she still rode on apace. Damsel, quoth Amadis, shall we not rest ? We shall find tents farther on, she answered, and those who will greatly rejoice at your coming ; do you keep your pace, and I will ride forward and make them ready to receive you. So she went on. They had not followed far before they saw two tents by the wayside, where several damsels stood ready with her who had been their guide to welcome them. Sirs, said she, dismount here and rest, for you have travelled far. They alighted, and there were servants ready to take their horses, and to disarm them, and they took away all the arms. Why do you remove our arms ? quoth Amadis. The damsel answered, They are taking them to the other tent where you will sleep. Then they seated themselves

upon the carpet, expecting supper, when on a sudden fifteen armed men, knights and others, came upon them, crying, Yield or you are but dead ! They started up thereat, but they had nothing wherewith to defend themselves, and lances were pointed at their breasts and at their backs, and at their faces ; then was Amadis so enraged that the blood gushed from his nostrils and eyes. Ah, traitors ! quoth he, you see how this is ! if we had our arms the business should end in another guise ! That, said they, will not avail you : you are our prisoners ! Cried Galaor, If we are it is by great treason, and that I will prove upon the two best of you ; aye, the best three, if you will give me my arms ! The knight answered, The proof is not wanted : if you talk more it will be to your cost. What ! cried Amadis, we will rather die than be thus taken ! The knight went to the door of the tent—Madam, they will not yield : shall we slay them ? She answered, Stay a little, and if they will not obey my will, then off with their heads. Then she entered : she was a right fair lady, and in great anger, and she said to the brethren, Yield to me, or ye die ! Amadis was silent ; but Galaor answered, Brother, we cannot now hesitate, since the lady wills it. Madam, let us have our arms and horses, and if your men cannot then take us, we will surrender ourselves to your pleasure ; as we are now, there is no merit in yielding. I shall not trust you this time, she replied ; but I counsel you to yield yourselves. And they seeing they had no remedy yielded, and were thus made prisoners ; the lady not knowing who they were, for the damsel would not tell their names, being assured that if she had named them they should immediately have been slain, and then would she be the most

unhappy person in the world to have caused the death of two such knights ; and she wished herself dead before she had committed so great a treason, but now she could do no more than keep secret their names. The lady then said, Now that ye are my prisoners I will propose a thing to you, to which if ye consent I will set ye free ; else shall ye be thrown into such a prison that it will be worse than death. Lady, quoth Amadis, it may be that what you require is a thing that we may readily grant ; and it may be such, that if it is to our shame we shall rather suffer death. Of your shame, said she, I know nothing ; but if you will forsake the service of King Lisuarte, and go before him and tell him you do it by command of Madasina, Lady of Gantasi, I will set you free ; and tell him that she does this because he keeps the knight in his court who slew the good knight Dardan. Galaor answered, If you do thus, lady, thinking to despise the king, it will not avail ; for we are two knights, who have as yet nothing but our arms and horses, and as he has in his household so many of great prowess, he will care little for us, what we do, or whither we go ; but to us it would be great dishonour, so that we can in no ways consent.—What ! will you rather be cast into that prison than forsake the falsest king in the world ? Lady, said Galaor, these speeches but ill beseem you : the king is good and loyal, and no knight lives against whom I would not prove that there is no falsehood in him. Certes, quoth she, you utter your love for him in a luckless time ; and she ordered her people to tie their hands. That will I do willingly, said one of her knights, and off with ! heads too if you let me ! and he took Amadis by the arms ; but Amadis caught hold of him, and was

in the breast with such force that he fell at his feet senseless. With that they all fell upon him to kill him, but an old knight drew his sword, and stood between and drove them off ; yet not till Amadis had received a spear wound in his right shoulder, though it was not deep. Madam, quoth the old knight, you are doing the greatest devilry in the world, to suffer knights and hidalgos who are your prisoners to be slain. She answered, Why should they not slay the most foolish knight living, who at such a time was so rash ? Then said Galaor, We will suffer none to tie our hands but you ; for you are a fair lady, and we are your prisoners, and it is just that we obey you. Then I will do it, quoth she ; and she took their hands, and tied them tight with a leathern thong ; and she ordered the tents to be struck, and placed her prisoners upon two palfreys that were led by her servants. Gandalin and Galaor's esquire went on foot, tied with a rope, and in this manner they proceeded all night through the forest. And I tell you that Amadis then wished himself dead, not for what he suffered, for he could endure such chances better than any one beside, but because of what the lady demanded ; for if he refused, he should be thrown where he could not see Oriana ; and if he assented, he must quit her father's court, and so be separated from her : these thoughts greatly troubled him. The old knight saw his trouble, and thought it was for the pain of his wound. Now the damsel who had deceived them was his daughter, and she told him who they were, and besought him for mercy and for God's sake to save their lives, if he could. He then came nigh to Amadis, and asked him if his wound pained him, and how he fared. Amadis seeing that it was the old knight who had saved him

from death, answered, Sir, my friend, I have no wound to pain me ; but I complain of a damsel who brought us here by deceit to give her succour, and has foully betrayed us. You have indeed been deceived, replied the knight ; I know you better than you imagine, and would willingly serve you, for if it be discovered who you are, you are but dead : take my advice ; you are a handsome knight, and the lady has heard that you are one of the best in the world : carry yourself fairly towards her, and woo her in marriage or elseways, for she is a woman whose heart is to take her pleasure ; but lose no time, for she will send from the place where we are to sleep to learn your names, which the damsel who brought you here has concealed. Amadis, who regarded Oriana more than death, answered, My friend, God's will be done ! but this never shall be, even though she herself requested my love, and would therefore set me free ! Certes, quoth the knight, this is a great marvail, that you are in the point of death, and will not seek to help yourself. Such help, cried Amadis, by God's blessing I will never seek ! but talk with that other knight, whom you may with more reason commend than me.


When the old knight repeated his advice to Galaor, Galaor was greatly pleased : If you bring this about, said he, that I can win the lady, we shall always be bound to serve you. The knight then rode on, and coming up to his lady, said, You are leading away your prisoners, and know not whom you have taken. —Why do you say this ?—Because you have taken the best knight that I know, and the most accomplished in all good manners.—Is it Amadis, whose life *I so much desire to take away* ?—No ; I speak of

first: besides his great courage, he is the handsomest young knight that ever I saw, and you are discourteous to him. You should not do this, for it is great villainy: you have imprisoned him who does not deserve it, because you hate another; it were better to treat him honourably, and show favour to him, for by that way should you more readily win his consent to what you demand. I will wait, said she, and see what sort of man he is.—You will see the fairest knight that ever you beheld. By this the two brethren had come close to each other: Brother, said Galaor, I see you in danger of death; I beseech you follow my counsel. I will, said Amadis, and God give you more honour than fear. The lady had stopped her palfry, and waited for him. She saw him, better than she had done in the night, and thinking him the handsomest man in the world, asked him how he fared? Worse than you should fare, lady, he replied, if you were in my power as I am in yours; for I would do you what service and pleasure possible I could, and I know not why you should do all the contrary to me who have not deserved this treatment; reason being that I should rather be your knight to serve and love you as my lady, than to be thrown into your prison which is so little agreeable. Madasima, who was greatly taken with him, replied, Knight, if I should chuse you for my friend, and deliver you from prison, would you forsake the company of King Lisuarte for my sake, and tell him wherefore you forsook him? Yes, quoth Galaor, and will make what covenant you please to do it; and so shall my companion, who will not refuse what I shall command him. You shall swear this, said Madasima, before a lady with whom we are going to lodge. Meantime,

promise me not to depart from me, and your hands shall be untied. Whereupon they were unbound, and their squires likewise released, to whom a palfrey without a saddle was given that they might ride.

All the day Madasima and Galaor went on communing; at sunset they came to Castle Abies, the lady whereof honourably welcomed them, because of the great friendship between her and Madasima. Then before that lady and two knights, her sons, she said, Hear a covenant between us: this knight is my prisoner, and I chuse him for my friend; so also is the other, and the covenant is in this manner: they shall both forsake the service of King Lisuarte, telling him how for my sake they do it, and I will set them free on this condition; and you and your sons shall meet them before King Lisuarte, and see that they fulfil their promise; wherein if they fail, ye shall every where publish abroad their falsehood; and ten days I give them to execute this. Good friend, said the lady of the castle, I am well pleased to do this, if they consent thereto. We will perform it! quoth Galaor. So Galaor that night took his pleasure with Madasima, a lady who was very fair, and of good wealth and high lineage, but not of such great worth as beseemed her. In the morning their arms and horses were restored them, and they departed divers ways; she to her castle Gantasi, the brethren towards London, right glad of their escape, and weening that they should honourably discharge their covenant. That night they were lodged in a hermitage, and had poor fare for their supper; the next day they continued their road.

CHAP. XXXV.—In which is shown the ruin of King Lisuarte, and all that befell him in consequence of the rash promises which he had made.

N the fourth day after the brethren's departure, that old knight who had brought the crown and mantle entered the royal tent, and kneeling before Lisuarte said, How is it, sir, that you wear not the crown which I left you; nor you, madam, the rich mantle? The king was silent. He continued, I am glad you like them not, for now I shall neither lose my head, nor the gift you were to give me for them: let them therefore be restored to me forthwith, because I may not tarry here. When the king heard this he was troubled, and replied, Knight, I can neither return the crown nor the mantle, for both are lost: it grieves me more for your sake who stand in such need of them, than for my own, though I so highly valued them. Wretch that I am! quoth the old knight; I am dead! and by the worst death that ever knight undeservedly perished! and then he made great dole, and the tears ran down his beard which was as white as wool; so that the king said to him in compassion, Fear not for your head, for you shall have whatever is in my power to ransom it: so I have promised, and so will I perform. The knight fell at his feet and would have kissed them, but the king raised him up by the hand; Now then, ask what you will. It is true, sir, quoth he, that you were either to return me my crown and mantle, or give what I should ask for them; and God knows I intended not to ask what I now needs must, and if other thing in the world might save me, I would not distress you thus: it will be a great evil to you, but it would be as great if such

a man as you should break his faith: it will grieve you to give, and me to receive! Ask what you want, said Lisuarte, for I have nothing so dear that it should be refused. The knight answered, Many thanks for this assurance! but I must be made secure of all who are now in your court, that they offer me no wrong or force because of the boon, and you yourself also must promise me this; for neither will you keep your word, nor shall I be satisfied, if you take away from me what you have given. Said the king, this is but reason, and I promise you security; and accordingly it was so proclaimed. Then the old knight said, Sir, I can only be preserved from death by the crown and mantle, or by your daughter Oriana! now give me which you will, but rather would I have what is my own.

Lisuarte exclaimed, Ah, knight, thou hast asked a great thing! And all who were present were greatly grieved; but the king who was the most loyal man in the world, bade them not trouble themselves. It is better, said he, to lose my daughter than to break my word; the one evil afflicts few, the other would injure all: for how would the people keep faith one with another, if they could not depend upon the king's truth? And he commanded his daughter to be brought. When the queen and her ladies heard that, they made the most sorrowful outcry that ever was heard; but the king ordered them to their chambers, and he forbade all his people to lament, on pain of losing his favour. My daughter, cried he, must fare as God hath appointed; but my word shall never wilfully be broken! By this was Oriana come before the king, like one amazed, and falling at his feet she cried, My father and lord! what is it that you would do? I do it.

quoth he, that I may not break my word. Then he said to the old knight, you see here the gift you have asked ! will there be other company with her ? He replied only the two knights and the two squires who came with me to Windsor. I can take no other company ; but this I tell you, there is nothing to fear before I place her in the hands of him to whom I must deliver her. Let a damsel go with her, for honour and decency sake, said Lisuarte, that she may not be among you alone. This the knight granted. But when Oriana heard all this, she fell down senseless ; yet did not that avail her, for he took her up in his arms, weeping as if what he did were against his will, and gave her to an esquire who was mounted on a strong horse and a fast goer, to place her before him, and bade him hold her fast, for she was senseless. God knows, quoth he, there is none in the court more grieved for this than myself. The king had sent for the Damsel of Denmark, and making her mount a palfrey, said to her, Go with your lady, and neither for good nor evil that may befall you, ever leave her, so long as you may continue with her. Ah, wretch that I am ! quoth she, I never thought to take such a journey as this. Then they moved from before the king, and the great and large-limbed knight who would not unhelm himself at Windsor, took Oriana's bridle : this was Arcalaus the enchanter. As they went out from the court, Oriana sighed as if her heart was breaking ; and said to herself, Dear friend, in a woe-ful hour the boon was granted, for by it both you and I are dead ! And this she said, remembering how she had given Amadis leave to depart with the damsel ; but they who heard her thought she spoke of her father. Presently they entered the forest with her

and rode on at a great pace, till they left that road, and struck into a deep valley.

The king mounted his horse, and with a wand in his hand suffered none to go against them, for so he had promised. Mabilia, who was weeping at the window, saw Ardian the dwarf of Amadis near the walls upon a great and swift horse, and she called to him, Friend Ardian, if you love your master, rest neither day nor night till you have found him and told him this unhappy adventure. You are a traitor to him, if you will not do this; for he would rather know this at this time than have this whole city as his own. By Holy Mary, cried the dwarf, he shall know it as soon as possible! and giving the scourge to his horse, he galloped along the road which Amadis had taken with the damsel.

While King Lisuarte was at the entrance of the forest with twenty knights, making all those turn back who would have gone to his daughter's rescue, he saw the damsel approach to whom he had promised a boon. She came more than apace upon a palfrey, and had a rich sword hanging from her neck, and a lance, whose iron was fairly wrought and its stave painted. God give you joy, sir, said she to the king, and a heart to fulfil what you promised me at Windsor before your knights! He replied, Damsel, I have need of joy; howbeit I remember the promise, and will perform it.—With that hope, sir, I came to you, as the most loyal king in the world: now then revenge me upon a knight in this forest, who slew my father by treason, and forced me. But in such sort is he enchanted, that he cannot be done to death except the most honourable man of the kingdom of London give him a blow with this lance, and another with this sword: these he gave in keeping to a lady, think-

ing that she loved him ; but it was otherwise, for she mortally hating him gave me the sword and lance that I might have my revenge. It must be by your hand, for there is none else so honourable. If you dare undertake this, you must go alone, for I have promised to bring a knight to do combat with him this day, and he is ready, not thinking that I have got the lance and the sword. The covenant between us is, that, if he conquers, I shall forgive him ; but, if he is vanquished, he must obey my will. In God's name, quoth the king, let us go ! He called for his arms and mounted his good horse, and leaving his own sword, which was the best in the world, girded on that which the damsel gave him ; he threw his shield round his neck : the damsel carried his helmet and the painted lance, and he went with her, having commanded that none should follow him. They rode some way along the road, then left it and turned among some trees, the same way that Oriana had been carried, and there the king met an armed knight upon a black horse ; he had a green shield hanging from his neck, and his helmet was of the same colour. Take your arms, sir, cried the damsel, there is the knight ! He laced on his helmet, and taking the lance called out to the knight to defend himself. They ran at each other, and broke both their lances ; but the king's broke so immediately, that he felt as though he had missed his stroke. They then drew their swords, and struck at each other's helms ; the knight's sword entered halfway into the king's helmet, but the king's broke off at the hilt : then he knew there was treason ; and seeing that the knight was attempting to kill his horse, he caught hold of him, and struggled till they both fell together, and Lisuarte being uppermost got the sword

which his enemy had let fall, and began to smite at him. When the damsel saw that, she cried with a loud voice, Help ! help ! Arcalaus ! or your cousin is slain ! Presently the king heard a great noise, and looking round beheld ten knights riding towards him, and the one who was foremost exclaimed, King Lisuarte, thou art a dead man ! thou shalt never reign another day, nor ever wear crown again ! When the king heard this, he verily believed his end was come ; but he answered him with that great courage which he always had : That may well be, seeing ye have me at such advantage ; but ye shall die for me, like traitors and liars as ye are ! The knight then ran at him full force, and smote him so rudely on the shield that he came to the ground ; but presently rising, he struck at the horse and cut his leg clean off, so that he fell and the knight under him. By this the others came up and all beset him, and they bruised him with the breasts of their horses, and the two who were dismounted closed with him and forced his sword from his hands ; then took away his shield and his helmet, and fastened a great chain round his neck ; then they placed him on a palfrey, and taking the ends of the chain, one on each side, led him among the trees to the place where Arcalaus was with Oriana and the damsel of Denmark ; and the foremost knight cried to him, Cousin, here is King Lisuarte ! Quoth Arcalaus, He is welcome : henceforth we shall neither fear him nor his household. Ah, villain, quoth the king, wounded as I am, I would make thee confess thy treason if thou wouldst do battle with me ! I should not value myself more for conquering such a knight as thou art, Arcalaus answered. Then speaking to one of his people,—Go to London with a

and tell Barsinan to make himself king, for all is ready, and I will do what I promised him. Take you ten knights, said he to another, and carry Lisuarte to Daganel, and cast him into the dungeon. I will take Oriana with these four knights, and show her my books and things at Mount Aldin: this was one of the strongest castles in the world. So they divided company in this manner, whereby Arcalaus showed that he thought himself equal to five knights.*

CHAP. XXXVI.—How Amadis and Galaor knew of this great treason and took counsel to procure, if they could, the liberty of the King and Oriana.



MADIS and Galaor were within two leagues of London when they saw Ardan the dwarf coming towards them as fast as horse could gallop. Never trust me, quoth Amadis, if he comes not with the news of some great mishap to seek us. Presently the dwarf came up and related all his tidings, and how Oriana was carried away. Holy Mary, help me! cried Amadis: which way did they take her?—By the city is the nearest road. Amadis immediately spurred his horse, and galloped amain towards London, so confounded with the terror of this news that he never spoke a word to Galaor, who followed him full speed. They passed close by the town without stopping a minute, only Amadis enquired of all he saw which way the Princess had been taken; but as Gandalin passed under the windows where the queen and her ladies were, the queen called him, and

* There follows in the original a column of advice to all emperors and kings upon the mutability of fortune, as instanced in King Lisuarte's situation.

throw the king's sword to him, which was the best sword that ever knight girded on : Take it to your master, quoth she, and God speed him with it ! and tell Galaor that the king went from hence with a damsel this morning, and is not yet returned, and we know not where she has led him. Gandalin took the sword and rode as fast as he could after Amadis, who coming to a brook missed the bridge in his hurry, and forcing the horse to leap, the tired animal fell short into the mud ; then Gandalin came up to him and gave him the sword, and the horse which he himself rode. Presently they turned aside from the road to follow the track of horsemen, and there they saw some woodmen, who asked them if they came from London, for if a knight and a damsel be missing there, said they, we have seen an adventure ; and then they told them what they had beheld. Who is it that has taken them ? quoth Amadis ; for he knew it was Lisuarte by the description. They answered, The damsel who led the knight here called loudly for Arcalaus. Lord God ! quoth Amadis : let me but find that traitor !—The woodmen then told them how the party had separated, and said that one of the five knights who went with the damsel was the biggest knight they had ever seen. Amadis knew that that was Arcalaus ; and bidding Galaor follow where the king went, he spurred on after Oriana. By sunset the horse could carry him no farther, and he being greatly distressed, saw a little to the right of the road a knight lying dead, and a squire by him holding his horse. Who slew that knight ? cried Amadis. A traitor that passed by, carrying the fairest damsel in the world by force, and he slew my master only for asking who they were, and here is no one to help me

to remove the body.—My squire shall help you : give me your master's horse : I promise to give you two better in return. . He told Gandalin to follow him after the body was disposed of, and galloped on. Towards day-break he came to a hermitage in a valley, and asked the hermit if he had seen five knights pass carrying with them two damsels ? Do you see yonder castle ? he replied : my nephew tells me that Arcalaus the enchanter is lodged there, and with him two fair damsels whom he hath taken by violence. By God the very villain whom I seek !—He hath done much evil in this land, replied the hermit. God remove him or mend him !—Then Amadis asked him if he had any barley for his horse ; and while the horse was feeding, enquired who was the lord of the castle. Grumen, said the good man, cousin to Dardan who was slain in Lisuarte's court, and therefore the king's enemies put up there. Now God be with you, father ! quoth Amadis ; I beseech you remember me in your prayers ! which way to the castle ?—Amadis followed the path which the good man had pointed out, and came up to it, and saw that the wall was high and the towers strong. He listened and could hear no sound within, and that pleased him, for he knew that Arcalaus was not gone forth ; and he rode round, and saw that it had only one issue. Then he retired among some crags, and, dismounting, stood holding the bridle, and with his eyes fixed upon the gate, like one who had no will to sleep. By this the morning broke, and he removed farther across a valley to a hill that was well wooded, for he feared that if those of the castle saw him they would suspect there were others at hand, and therefore not come out. Presently the gate opened, and a knight came out, and went to a high

eminence and looked all round ; then returned into the castle. It was not long before he saw Arcalaus and his four companions come out, all well armed, and among them Oriana. Ah, God ! quoth he, now and for ever help me in her defence ! They drew near him, and he heard Oriana say, Dear friend, I shall never see thee more, for I go to my death. The tears came into his eyes ; he descended the hill as fast as he could, and came after them into a great plain, and then cried, Arcalaus ! traitor ! it becomes not one like thee to carry away so excellent a lady ! Oriana knew the voice, and shook all over ; but Arcalaus and the other ran at him. He took his aim at Arcalaus, and bore him right over the crupper ; then turned his horse and smote at Grumen, so that the point and part of the stave of the spear came out at his back, and he fell down dead, and the spear broke in him. Then he drew the king's sword, and laid about with such rage and violence, and felt such strength in himself, that he thought if the whole plain were full of knights they could not stand before him. We are succoured ! quoth the damsel of Denmark : it is the fortunate knight ! look at the wonders he performeth ! Ah, God protect thee, dear friend ! cried Oriana : none other in the world can save us. The squire who had her in his keeping seeing what had passed, cried out, Certes I shall not wait till those blows come upon my head which shields and helmets cannot resist ! and he put the princess down, and rode off full speed. By this Amadis had cut thro' the arm of another, and sent him away howling with the agony of death ; and he cleft a third down to the neck. The fourth began to fly, and Amadis was after him, when he heard his lady cry : and looking round, saw that

Arcalaus had mounted again, and was dragging her up by the arm. Amadis soon came up to them, and lifting up his sword dared not put forth his strength lest he should slay both, but with a half-blow he smote him on the shoulder, and cut away part of the cuirass and the skin; then Arcalaus let Oriana fall, that he might escape the better. Turn, Arcalaus, cried Amadis, and see if I be dead as thou hast reported! but he in fear of death spurred on, and threw his shield from off his neck for speed. The blow made at him just reached his loins with the sword-end, and fell upon the horse's flank and wounded it, so that the beast rode away more furiously. Amadis, albeit he so hated the enchanter, did not pursue him further, lest he should lose his mistress, he turned towards her, and alighted and knelt before her, and kissed her hand, saying, Now let God do with me what he will! I never thought to see you again. She being among the dead was in great terror, and could not speak, but she embraced him. The damsel of Denmark going to hold his horse saw the sword of Arcalaus on the ground, and admiring its beauty gave it to Amadis; but he seeing it was right glad thereof, for it was King Perion's sword which had been placed in his cradle, and which Arcalaus had taken when he enchanted him. Presently Gandalin came up, who had travelled all night long: a joyful man was he seeing how the quest had ended.

Amadis then placed Oriana upon the damsel's palfrey, while Gandalin caught one of the loose horses for the damsel, and taking her bridle they left the place of battle. But Amadis as they went along reminded Oriana how she had promised to be his; Hitherto, said he, I have known that it was not in

your power to show me more favour than you did ; but now that you are at full liberty, how should I support disappointments without the worst despair that ever destroyed man !. Dear friend, quoth she, never for my sake shall you suffer, for I am at your will : though it be an error and a sin now, let it not be so before God.—When they had proceeded about three leagues they entered a thick wood, and about a league farther there was a town. Oriana, who had not slept a wink since she left her father's house, complained of fatigue : let us rest in that valley, said Amadis. There was a brook there and soft herbage ; there Amadis took her from her palfrey : The noon, said he, is coming on very hot, let us sleep here till it be cooler, and meantime Gandalin shall go bring us food from the town. He may go, replied Oriana, but who will give him food ?—They will give it him for his horse, which he may leave in pledge, and return on foot. No : said Oriana, let him take my ring, which was never before so useful : and she gave it to Gandalin, who, as he went by Amadis, said to him, He who loses a good opportunity, sir, must wait long before he find another. Oriana laid herself down upon the damsel's cloak, while Amadis disarmed, of which he had great need, and the damsel retired farther among the trees to sleep. Then was his lady in his power, nothing loth ; and the fairest damsel in the world became a woman. Yet was their love encreased thereby, as pure and true love always is.

When Gandalin returned, the damsel prepared the food ; and, though they had neither many serving-men, nor vessels of gold and silver, yet was that a sweet meal upon the green grass in the forest.

CHAP. XXXVII.—How Don Galaor delivered King Lisuarte from the captivity to which they were treacherously leading him away.



ALAOOR rode on after the king so fast as his horse could carry him ; still following the track of the horsemen. About vespers he met a knight who cried out to him, Whither so fast ? stop and tell me ! I have no time, quoth he.—By St. Mary, you pass not so ! tell me, or fight me ! But Galaor still rode on.—Certes, knight, cried the stranger, you have committed some villainy that you fly so fast : défend yourself ! Galaor turned as if to meet him in his career, but dextrously moved aside, so that the knight's horse in his speed carried him a good way on. Ah, coward ! cried the knight, when at last he turned, thou shalt answer me or die ! and he ran at him again full tilt. Again Galaor avoided the encounter, and rode on as fast as he could. When the knight saw him far before, he said, As God shall help me, he shall not escape so ! and knowing the country well, he struck across by a nearer way, and took possession of a pass. Faint-hearted coward ! quoth he, chuse now of three things : fight, or turn back, or answer me ! I like neither, replied Galaor, and you are discourteous : if you want to know why I go so fast, follow me and see ; I should lose time in telling you, and you would not believe me, it is for so great an evil. The knight answered, in God's name then go on, and I will follow thee though for these three days.

In about half a league's time they saw one knight running after his horse, and another gallopping away from him. He who was with Galaor knew him on

foot, for he was his cousin, and he caught the horse for him, and asked him, How is this? He replied, I was riding along thinking upon you know what, when that knight yonder gave me such a thrust on my shield that the horse fell upon his knees and threw me. I drew my sword, and called to him to do battle; but he only cried out, Remember to answer another time when you are spoken to! and so he rode away. By my faith in God, let us follow him, and see you how I will avenge myself. I cannot, said his cousin, now, for I must keep this knight company for three days; and then he related what had befallen him with Galaor. Quoth the other, Certes either he is the greatest coward in the world, or he goes upon some great adventure: I will forego my own vengeance to see the end of this. By this Galaor was far before them, for he did not tarry a whit, and they rode after him. It was now drawing towards night. Galaor entered a forest, and soon lost the track, for it was dark, so that he knew not which way to take. Then he began to pray to God to guide him that he might be the first to succour the king; and thinking that those horsemen might have led the king apart from the road to rest themselves, he went along the bottoms listening every where if he might hear them. The knights thinking he had kept the road, rode straight forward about a league till they came through the forest, and not seeing him there they imagined he had hidden himself, and they turned aside to lodge in the house of a dame hard by.

When Galaor had searched the forest throughout, and found nothing, he resolved to proceed, and ascer some eminence the next day to look about. recovering the road, he went on till he came into

open country, and there he saw before him in a valley a little fire. Thither he went ; it was some forgermen, and they seeing him come among them in arms, took up lances and hatchets to defend themselves ; but he bidding them not fear, besought them to give him some barley for his horse. The which they did, and he gave the beast his supper. They would have given him also to eat, but he would not ; only he lay down to sleep, requesting them to wake him before day-break. The night was two parts gone, and Galaor lay down by the fire, completely armed. At dawn he rose, for he had not slept much for pure vexation, and, commending them to God, he took his leave. His squire had not been able to keep pace with him, and thenceforth he vowed if God prospered him, to give his squire the better horse. So he rode to a high hill, and from thence began to look all round him.

The two cousins had now left the lady's house, and it being now day they saw Galaor on the eminence, and knowing him by his shield rode towards him. As they drew nigh they saw him descend the hill as fast as horse could carry him. Certes, quoth the one, he is flying and concealing himself for some mischief : if I come up with him, God never help me if I do not learn from him what he hath deserved. But Galaor, thinking nothing of them, had just seen ten knights passing a strait at the entrance of the forest, of whom five rode first and five behind, and some unarmed men went in the middle. These he thought to be the villains with the king, and went towards them like a man who has devoted his own life to save another. Coming near, he saw Lisuarte with the chain about his neck ; and then, with grief and rage that defied danger, he ran at the first five, exclaiming,


Ah, traitors ! to your own misfortune have you laid hands upon the best man in the world ! The five at once ran at him ; he smote the first so sternly, that the wood of his lance appeared through his back, and he fell dead ; the others smote him with such force that his horse fell upon his knees, and one of them drove his spear between Galaor's shield and breast-plate. Galaor forced it from him, and striking at another with it, nailed his leg to the horse, and left the broken lance in them ; then putting hand to sword, the others all came at him, and he defended himself so bravely that every one wondered how he could bear up against such blows. But being in this great press of danger, it pleased God to succour him with the two cousins who were in his pursuit, who seeing his great chivalry, exclaimed, Of a truth we wrongly called him coward : let us go help the best knight in the world ! With that they ran full tilt to his assistance, like men who knew their business, for they had each been errant knights for ten years, and the one was called Ladasin, the sword-player, and the other Don Guilan the pensive, the good knight. At this time Galaor had great need of their aid, for his helmet was hacked and battered, his harness open in many places, and his horse tottering with loss of blood ; yet he felt assured that, if his horse did not fail him, he should bring it to a good end. But when the two cousins came to his help, then he bestirred himself more hopefully, for he marvelled at their prowess. The load of blows was lightened, and he had room for action. When the cousin of Arcalaus saw how things were going, for his knights were falling on sides, he ran to Lisuarte to slay him. Those were with the king had fled, and he got from

palfrey with the chain about his neck, and caught a shield and sword from the ground, and received upon the shield the blow that was meant for his death. The sword passed a palm's length through the rim of the shield, and with its point reaching to the head made a slant wound to the skull; but the king smote at his enemy's horse in the face, so that the traitor could not repeat the blow, and the horse reared and fell back upon the rider. Galaor now on foot, for his horse could not move, ran to him to smite off his head; but the king called out not to slay him. In this the two cousins had made an end of their last enemy, and then turning round they knew the king to their great wonder, for they knew nothing of what had happened; and they took off their helmets, and knelt before him. He raised them up, saying, I my God, friends, you have succoured me in time great wrong, Don Guilan, hath your mistress done me in withdrawing you from my company, and for your sake I lose Ladasin also. Guilan was ashamed at these words, and his cheeks crimsoned, for he loved the Duchess of Bristol and she loved him, and the duke always suspected it was he who had entered the castle when Galaor was there.

Galaor had now taken the chain from Lisuarte, and fastened it round the cousin of Arcalaus; they took the horses of the dead, one for the king, and one for Galaor, and rode towards London. They halted at the dwelling of Ladasin, and there found Galaor's squire and Ardian the dwarf, who thought his master had taken that way. A squire was sent forthwith to inform the queen of Lisuarte's safety. They rested that night; and, as they set forth on the morning, their prisoners confessed how all that had passed had

been concerted with Barsinan, that he might make himself king of Great Britain ; which, when Lisuarte heard, he spurred on in greater haste.

CHAP. XXXVIII.—How tidings came to the queen that King Lisuarte was made prisoner, and how Barsinan executed his treason, and how at last he was overthrown and the king restored to his kingdom.

 HE woodmen had carried the news of Lisuarte's imprisonment to London ; immediately there was a great stir in the city ; the knights all ran to horse, and galloped to his rescue, so that the whole plain seemed full of them. King Arban of North Wales was talking with the queen, when his squires brought him horse and arms, and a page said to him, Arm yourself, sir ! what are you doing ? there is not a knight of all the king's company, except yourself, who is not gone full speed to the forest. And why ? quoth Arban.—Because they say ten knights are carrying away the king prisoner. Holy Mary ! exclaimed the queen ; I always feared this ! and she fell down in a swoon. Arban left her to the care of her ladies, all making loud lamentation, and armed himself. As he was mounting, he heard a great cry that the tower was taken. Holy Mary ! quoth he, we are all betrayed ! and then he knew he must not leave the queen. By this time there was such an uproar in the town, as if all the people of the world were there. Arban drew up his two hundred knights before the queen's palace, and sent two of them to discover the cause of the tumult. They went to the tower, and saw that Barsinan had got possession

sion of it, and was killing some and throwing other from the walls, for he had six hundred knights with him, besides footmen, and the king's knights suspecting nothing had all gone to their master's rescue. The townsmen hearing this, ran all armed as they could in haste to the queen's palace, and there also Barsina went that he might take her, and get possession of the crown and throne. When he arrived he found Arban ready for defence. Arban, quoth he, you have hitherto been the wisest knight of a young man that has been known: see now that you lose not your wisdom. Why do you say this? cried Arban.—Because before five days end Lisuarte's head will be sent me, and there is no other in this land who can and ought to be king except myself, and king I will be! I give you the kingdom of North Wales which now you hold, because you are a good knight and wise: so retire now, and let me take the crown and throne, for whosoever opposes me shall lose his head. Villain and traitor! quoth Arban; and then began a sharp conflict, wherein many were slain, which lasted till night, for the streets being narrow Barsina could not avail himself of his numbers, and King Arban behaved himself that he that day saved the queen.

At night both parties retired: The queen then sent for Arban; he went to her armed as he was, and wounded in many places, and, when he came before her, took off his battered helmet. There were five wounds in his face and neck, and his countenance was all bloody; but it seemed a beautiful face to those who, under God, thought him their protector. But the queen seeing him, wept aloud with great pity. Ah, good nephew, God defend thee! what will become of the king? and what will become of us? Of his

quoth Arban, we shall have good news ; for ourselves, fear nothing from these traitors : your vassals who are with me can defend themselves in their great loyalty. —But, nephew, you are not in a state to bear arms, and what can the others do without you ! Fear not, lady, so long as life is in me I shall not forsake my arms.

Barsinan, who found his people had need of rest, took twenty knights with him in the morning, and went to a post which Arban's high steward kept. They at the barrier took their arms to defend themselves, but Barsinan cried out that he came to speak with them, and make a truce till noon ; to which Arban, being advised thereof, assented willingly, for the most part of his company had been so hardly handled that they could not bear arms. Barsinan then went to Arban, and said he would make a truce for five days. Agreed, said Arban, but provided that you shall not attempt to take anything in the town ; and that if the king comes, we immediately act as he may order us. I grant all this, said Barsinan, that there may be no more battling, for I value my own knights, and I value you who will be mine sooner than you think. I will tell you how : the king is dead, and I have his daughter and will make her my wife. God forsake me then, quoth Arban, if ever thou shalt have truce with me, since thou art a partaker in the treason against my liege lord ! go and do thy worst ! And before night Barsinan made three attacks upon him, and was repulsed.

CHAP. XXXIX.—How Amadis came to succour the City of London, and what he did there.

MEANTIME Amadis asked Oriana what Arca-
laus had said to her. He told me not
to grieve, said she, for within fifteen days
he would make me Queen of London, and give me
Barsinan for my husband, to whom he was to give
me and my father's head, and be made his high
steward in return. Holy Mary! quoth Amadis:
Barsinan who seemed such a friend! I fear lest he
do injury to the queen. Dear friend, cried Oriana,
hasten on! I must to my sorrow, replied Amadis, for
else I should have delighted to pass four days here in
the forest with you, if it had pleased you. Oriana
answered, God knows how willingly! but great evil
might happen thereby to this land, which if God
pleases will one day be yours and mine. As soon as
it was morning Amadis armed himself, and leading
his lady's bridle, rode on as fast as they could towards
London; and everywhere they met the knights, five
by five, and ten by ten, as they were seeking the
king; more than a thousand they met, and told them
which way the king was gone, and how Galaor was in
quest of him. When they came within five leagues of
London they met Grumedan, the good old knight who
had fostered the queen; twenty of his lineage were
with him, and they had been all night long scouring
the forest. He seeing Oriana went towards her weep-
ing: Oh God, lady, what a good day with your
coming? but what tidings of the king? They told
him what they knew, and Amadis said to him, Take
you charge of Oriana, and bid all the knights that you
shall meet turn back, for if numbers can succour him,

there are already more than enough gone : I must go with all speed to protect the Queen : With that he galloped away : at the entrance of the city he found the squire whom Lisuarte had sent with the news of his deliverance, and learnt also the state of the city. So entering as privately as he could he went to Arban, who embraced him right joyfully, and asked, what news ? As good as heart could wish ! quoth Amadis : let us go to the queen. He took with him Ladasin's messenger, and kneeling before Brisena, said, Lady, this squire has left Lisuarte safe and well, and I have left Oriana with your fosterer Grumedan ; they will soon be here, but I must go to look after Barsinan. He then changed his shield and helmet that he might not be known, and bade Arban throw down the barriers, that the traitors might come freely on, for by God's help they shall pay dearly for their treason ! The barriers were thrown down, and Barsinan prest on at the head of his people, thinking that all would now be his, for his own men were many and his enemies few, and he was eager to seize the queen. The king's party gave back being overpowered ; then Amadis went forth ; he had on a rusty helmet, and a plain shield hanging from his neck ; but he was soon judged to be a good one, and he went on making his way through the press ; and having the good sword of Lisuarte by his side. He forced his way to Barsinan and encountered him ; drove his lance through shield and corselet, and left the broken spear in him half way of its iron ; then drew he his sword, and smote off the crest and top of his helmet, and the scalp of his head, for the sword cut so finely that Amadis could scarce feel the blow he gave ; with another stroke he sheared thro' gauntlet and hand, and the sword pass-

ing through the bone of the wrist, fell on the leg and entered in half through. Then Barsinan fell, and Amadis turned upon the throng, and King Arban so prest them that they who could escape slaughter ran to the Tower, and made fast the gates. Amadis finding he could not force entrance readily, went back to Barsinan, and finding him still alive, ordered that he should be carried to the palace and kept till the king's return. Then the strife being over, he looked at the bloody sword which he held in his hand. Sword! quoth he, in a happy day was the knight born who shall wield you! and certes you are well employed, for being the best in the world, you belong to the noblest king! He then disarmed himself, and went to the queen; and Arban was laid in his bed, as there was great need, for he was sorely wounded.

At this time King Lisuarte was hastening to London. Of the knights whom he met, some he made turn back, others he sent through the vallies and by all roads to recal their comrades from their search. The first whom he met were Agrayes and Galvanes, and Solinan and Galdan, and Dinadaus and Bervas, all six together making great moan; who when they saw him would have kissed his hand, but he joyfully embraced them. Sir, said Dinadaus, the whole city are in quest of you like mad men. Nephew, replied the king, take some of these knights with you, and carry my shield that you may be the sooner obeyed, and turn back all whom you meet. This Dinadaus was one of the best knights of the king's lineage, and well esteemed among all good knights, as well for courteous bearing as for his good chivalry and prowess. When they came into the high road to London they fell in with Grumedan, the king's so dear friend, who

was conducting Oriana home ; and I tell you their pleasure was exceeding great, and the old man told him how Amadis was gone to the queen's succour. Presently they heard news what Barsinan had done, and how King Arban had defended the city, and how by the coming of Amadis all had been ended and the traitor taken. By the time the king reached London, there were in his company more than two thousand knights. When he came to the palace, who can tell the joy that was made? Immediately he had the Tower surrounded, and having made Barsinan and the cousin of Arcalaus confess the whole manner of their treason, they were both burnt in sight of their own people, who having no provisions, neither any remedy, in five days came to the king's mercy, and he executed justice upon some and pardoned others. Thus ended this treason, but it was the cause of much enmity between the countries of Great Britain and Sansuena, for a son of Barsinan, who was a good knight, came afterwards against Lisuarte, with a great power.

These dangers over the court proceeded as before, making great pastimes and festivals as well by night in the town, as by day in the fields. On one of those days the lady and her sons arrived, before whom Amadis and Galaor had made their covenant with Madasima. They seeing her went honourably to bid her welcome. Friends, said she, you know wherefore I am come : what will you do in this case? will you not keep your promise, for to-day is the time? In God's name, replied Galaor, let us go before the king. Let us go, quoth she. Then coming into the presence, the lady made her obeisance and said, Sir, I come here to see these knights perform a covenant which they have made; and then she repeated what they had

promised to Madasima, the lady of Gantasi. Ah, Galaor, cried the king, you have undone me ! Galaor answered, better this than to die : if we had been known, all the world could not have saved our lives ; and now the remedy is easier than you imagine. Brother, remember you have promised to follow my example ! Then Galaor related before the king, and all the knights present, by what treachery they had been taken. Sir king, said he, I now forsake you and your company for the sake of Madasima, the lady of Castle Gantasi ; for it is her will to do you this displeasure, and whatever others she can, for the hatred she bears you. Amadis affirmed what his brother had said. Have we performed our covenant ? then said Galaor to the three witnesses ; they answered, Yes, truly, you have acquitted your promise. In God's name ! quoth Galaor, and now you may return when you please, and tell Madasima that she has not made her terms so cunningly as she thought, as you may see. Sir, we have kept our covenant with Madasima, and forsaken your service ; but it was not stipulated how long we were to be out of your service, therefore we are free to use our own will, and freely again enter your service as before. At this Lisuarte was greatly pleased, and said to the lady, Certes these knights have fairly acquitted themselves of a promise so treacherously obtained, and just it is that they who deceive should be themselves deceived. Tell Madasima, that, if she hates me, she had it in her power to do me the greatest ill that could happen ; but God, who has preserved them from other perils, would not suffer them to perish by such hands. If it please you, sir, said the lady, tell me who these knights are ? Amadis and Don Galaor his brother. What ! was

Amadis in her power ? cried she : now God be praised that they are safe, for certes it had been great misadventure if two such good men had so perished ? She will be ready for pure vexation to inflict the death upon herself which she designed for them. Truly, quoth the king, that would be more justly done. So the lady went her way.

CHAP. XL.—How King Lisuarte held a cortes which lasted twelve days, at which great feastings were made, and of the many chiefs and knights who came there.



TWELVE days together did King Lisuarte continue his court, and, when it broke up, though many knights departed to their own lands, it was a wonder how many remained, and in like manner many dames and damsels continued to abide with the queen. Among those whom the king received into his company were the cousins Ladasin and Guilan the pensive, both good knights, but Guilan was the better of the twain, for in the whole kingdom of London there was none who surpassed him in worth ; but so absent was he, that none could enjoy his conversation or company, and of this love was the cause, and that to a lady who neither loved him nor any thing else to such an excess : her name was Brandalisa, sister to the queen of Sobradisa, and married to the duke of Bristol.

The day came whereon that duke was summoned to appear and answer the appeal of Olivas. The duke arrived, and was courteously by the king received. Sir, quoth he, you have summoned me to answer an accusation : he who made it lies, and I am ready to acquit myself as you shall judge right. Then uprow

Olivas, and with him all the errant knights present. Lisuarte asked why they arose. Grumedan answered, Because the duke threatens all knights errant, and therefore we are all concerned. Certes, quoth the king, a mad war hath he undertaken ! there is not in the world a king so mighty, or so wise, that he could bring a war like that to good issue ! but retire you at present, and seek not now to avenge yourselves : he shall have full justice. All then withdrew, but Olivas, who said, The duke who standeth before you, sir, hath slain my cousin-german, who never by word or deed gave him occasion of offence : I therefore accuse him as a traitor for this, and will either make him confess it, or kill him, or force him out of the lists. The duke told him he lied, and that he was ready to acquit himself. The combat was fixed for the next day, for the duke's two nephews who were to fight on his side were not yet arrived.

They came that evening ; the duke made such account of them that he thought Olivas could not produce their peers. They went before the king. Olivas defied the duke, who demanded battle, three to three. Then Don Galvanes, who was at the feet of the king, rose, and called his nephew Agrayes, and said to Olivas, Friend, we promised to be on your side if need was : now then let the battle be. When the duke saw them, he remembered how they had rescued the damsel whom he would have burnt, and he was somewhat abashed. They armed themselves, and entered the place appointed for such trials ; one party through the one gate, the other on the opposite side. From the queen's window Olinda overlooked the lists, and seeing Agrayes about to fight her heart failed her ; and Mabilia and Oriana were greatly grieved for the love they bore to

him and Galvanes. The lists were cleared : the king withdrew from them, and the champions ran their encounter. Agrayes and his uncle dismounted their enemies, and broke both their lances. Olivas made the duke fall on his horse's neck, but received a deep wound himself, and the duke recovered his seat. Agrayes rode at him, and laid on him a heavy load of blows, heartily hating him for his great discourtesy and falsehood ; but one of the dismounted knights struck at the prince's horse, and buried the sword in his flank : the horse fell, and the duke and his nephew both assailed Agrayes as he lay upon the ground. Don Galvanes, closely busied with his antagonist, saw nothing of this. At that hour all who loved Agrayes were in great consternation ; Amadis yearned to be among them, for he greatly feared his cousin's death ; the three damsels above were well nigh desperate, and it was pitiful to behold Olinda, what she suffered. Howbeit, Agrayes got on his feet, and with the good sword of Amadis, which he wielded, laid lustily about him. Ah, God, cried Galaor aloud, what is Olivas about this while ! better that he had never borne arms, if he fails at a time like this ! But Galaor knew not what sore agony Olivas suffered ; for he had such a wound, and bled so fast, that it was a wonder how he kept his seat. He saw the peril of Agrayes, and heaving a deep sigh, as one whose heart did not fail him though his strength was failing, he cried, Oh God, let me help my good friend before my soul depart ! and then, feebly as he could, he laid hand to sword and turned upon the duke, and his spirit kept him up. Agrayes was now left man to man, and he remembered that his lady saw him, and he laid on so furiously that his friends trembled lest *his strength and breath should fail him ; but this was*

his custom, and if his strength had been equal to his great courage, he would have been one of the best knights in the world ; but even as it was he was right good, and of great prowess. Anon he had cut through armour and flesh in sundry places, and left his foe quivering with death, at the same moment when Olivas, fainting for loss of blood, fell from his horse. The duke not seeing how Agrayes had fared, turned upon Galvanes ; Agrayes leaped upon Olivas's horse, and rode to his uncle's assistance : he smote the duke's nephew upon the helmet, so that the sword stuck there ; and plucking it away, he burst the lacings, and left him bareheaded to the wrath of Galvanes, while he turned upon the duke. Presently Galvanes having finished his enemy, attacked the duke on the other side, but his horse being wounded fell and bruised him, so that man to man were left. Still were all the beholders right glad ; but above all Don Guilan, who hoped to see the duke slain, for the love he bore to his wife. The duke was flying, Agrayes reached the rim of his shield, the sword went in, the duke threw off the shield from his neck, and still fled ; then turned, while Agrayes was recovering his sword, and struck twice at him. The prince, as soon as his weapon was free, requited him with a blow on the left shoulder that went through harness and flesh and bone, down to the ribs. The duke fell, but hung in the stirrup, and the horse dragged him out of the lists, and when he was picked up his head was found dashed to pieces by the horse's heels. Agrayes forthwith alighted, and ran to his uncle, and asked how he fared. Bravely, quoth Galvanes, God be thanked ! but I am right sorry for Olivas, for methinks he is dead. They then ~~cast~~ the two nephews out of the lists, then went to Olivas,

and found that he had just opened his eyes, and was asking to be confessed. Galvanes looked at his wound: Take heart, cried he, it is not in a dangerous place! Sir, replied Olivas, my heart and all my limbs are dying away; I have been sore wounded ere now, but never was in such weakness. They disarmed him, and the fresh air was of service, and the blood somewhat ceased. The king sent a bed whereon to remove him, and skilful surgeons dressed his wound, and said that though it was very deep, by God's help they could heal it.

The queen then sent Grumedan to bring Brandalisa to court, and with her, her niece Aldeva: thereat was Don Guilan well pleased, and in a month they arrived, and were honourably welcomed. So the fame of King Lisuarte went abroad, and in half a year it was a marvel how many knights came from foreign parts to serve him, whom he rewarded bountifully, hoping by their aid not only to preserve his own kingdom, but to conquer others, that in old times had been subject and tributary to Great Britain.

CHAP. XLII.—Of the battle which Amadis had promised the fair child Briolania to perform against Abiseos and his two sons in revenge of her father's death.



HIS history has related to you how Amadis promised Briolania to revenge her father's death, and how she gave him a sword, and that when in his combat with Gasinan he broke the sword, he gave the pieces to Gandalin's care: you shall now hear how the battle was performed, and what great danger he underwent because of that bro-

sword, not from any fault of his own, but for the ignorance of his dwarf Ardian.

Amadis now recollecting that the time was come to perform his promise, acquainted Oriana, and requested her leave, though to him it was like dividing his heart from his bosom to leave her; and she granted it, albeit with many tears, and a sorrow that seemed to presage what evil was about to happen. Amadis took the queen's leave for form's sake, and departed with Galaor and Agrayes. They had gone about half a league, when he asked Gandalin if he had brought the three pieces of the sword which Briolania had given him, and finding he had not, bade him return and fetch them. The dwarf said he would go, for he had nothing to delay him; and this was the means whereby Amadis and Oriana were both brought into extreme misery, neither they nor the dwarf himself being culpable.

The dwarf rode back to his master's lodging, found the pieces of the sword, put them in his skirt, and was retiring, when, as he passed the palace, he heard himself called. Looking up, he saw Oriana and Mabilia, who asked him why he had not gone with his master. I set out with him, said he, but returned for this; and he showed her the broken sword. What can your master want a broken sword for? quoth Oriana. Because, said the dwarf, he values it more than the two best whole ones, for her sake who gave it him.—And who is she?—The lady for whom he undertakes this combat, and though you are daughter to the best king in the world, yet, fair as you are, you would rather win what she has won, than possess all your father's lands.—What gain so precious hath she made? perchance she hath gained your master?—Yea,

she has, his whole heart ! and he remains her knight to serve her ! Then, giving his horse the lash, he galloped away, little thinking the wrong he had done. Oriana remained pale as death ; she burst into bitter reproaches against the falsehood of Amadis, and wrung her hands, and her heart was so agitated that not a tear did she shed. It was in vain that Mabilia and the damsel of Denmark strove to allay her rage with reasonable words : as passionate women will do, she followed her own will, which led her to commit so great an error, that God's mercy was necessary to repair it.

The dwarf rejoined his master, and showed him the pieces of his sword, but Amadis asked him no questions, and he said nothing of what had passed. Presently they met a damsel, who asked whither they were going.—Along this road.—I advise you to leave it.—Why ?—Because no knight hath taken it for fifteen days but he hath either been slain or wounded. And who hath done all this mischief ? quoth Amadis. The best knight in arms that I have ever seen. Damsel, said Agraves, you must shew us this knight.—He will shew himself so soon as you enter the forest. The damsel then followed them ; they looked all round the forest in vain, till, as they were at the other side thereof, they saw a knight of good stature completely armed, on a roan horse, holding a lance, and a squire by him with four other lances. He speaking to his squire, the man laid the lances against a tree, and came up to the knights.—Sirs, yonder knight sends to inform ye that he hath kept this forest for fifteen days against all knights errant with fair fortune, and for the pleasure of the joust hath yet stayed a day and a half longer than his time appointed ; he

says, that if it please you to joust with him he is ready, but there shall be no sword combat, for in that he hath done much evil against his own will, and will avoid it henceforth if he can. Agrayes had taken his helm and thrown his shield round his neck, while the squire was speaking: tell him to defend himself! quoth he. They ran their race, their spears brake, and Agrayes was dismounted, and his horse ran loose, whereat he was greatly ashamed. Galaor took his arms to avenge him; the lances were broken: their bodies met with such force, that Galaor's horse, being the weaker and more weary, fell and threw him, and then ran away. Amadis seeing this, blessed himself: In truth, said he, the knight may well be praised, for he hath proved himself against two of the best in the world; but as he went on to take his turn he found Galaor on foot, with his sword in hand defying the knight to battle, but the knight laughed at him; and Amadis said; Brother, do not chafe yourself; it was the covenant that there should be no sword-battle. Then he bade the stranger defend himself, and they ran at each other: their spears flew up in splinters; they came against each other, shield and helmet; the horse fell with Amadis, and the horse broke his shoulder; the knight of the forest was dismounted, but he held the reins, and lightly took the saddle again. Quoth Amadis, You must joust again, for this encounter was equal, we both fell. I do not chuse to joust again, said he. Amadis replied, Knight, you do me wrong. Right yourself when you can! said the other: I am bound no farther, as I sent to tell you! and then he galloped away through the forest.

Amadis leapt upon Gandalin's horse, and told his companions to follow him as fast as they could to find

that knight, for they were all greatly abashed. Quoth the damsel, It will be a foolish quest : all the knights of King Lisuarte's household would fail to find him without a guide. My friend, said Galaor, belike you know who he is, and where to be found ? If I do, quoth she, I mean not to tell you, for I would bring no harm to so good a man. Ah, damsel, said Galaor, by the faith you owe to God, and by the thing in the world which you love best, tell me what you know of him. She answered, I care not for these conjurings, and will not discover him for nothing. Ask what you will, quoth Amadis.—Tell me your name, and promise me each a boon hereafter, when I shall demand it. They in their earnestness promised. When she heard the name of Amadis, she exclaimed, God be praised, for I was seeking you !—And wherefore ?—You shall know when it is time ; but tell me, have you forgot your promise to the daughter of the King of Sobradisa, who let loose the lions to save you ? I am now going, replied Amadis, to perform the battle. Why then, quoth she, would you turn astray to follow this knight, who is not so easy to find as you imagine, when your day is appointed for the combat ? She says true, sir brother, said Galaor : go you with Agrayes upon this business ; I will follow the knight with this damsel, for I shall never have joy till I find him, and I will join you in time for the battle if it be possible. In God's name ! cried Amadis, but tell us, damsel, the name of the knight.—I know it not, yet once I was a month with him and saw never else such deeds of arms ; but I can show where he is to be found. Then Galaor departed with her.

Amadis and Agrayes proceeded till they came to the castle of Torin, the dwelling of that fair young

damsel, who was now grown so beautiful that she appeared like a bright star. What think you of her? said Amadis. Agrayes answered, If her Maker designed to make her beautiful, he has most perfectly accomplished his will. They were disarmed, and mantles given them, and they were conducted into the hall. But when Briolania saw Amadis how young he was, for he was not twenty, and how beautiful, for even the scars in his face became him, and of what fair renown he was, she thought him the best knight in the world, and greatly affected him; so that when by his help she had recovered her kingdom, she would have given him herself and that, but Amadis told her right loyally how he was another's.

CHAP. XLII.—How Don Galaor went with the damsel in quest of the knight who had overthrown them, till he did battle with him

FOUR days Galaor rode with the damsel, and so wrathful was he for this fall that whatever knight encountered him in that time felt the effects, and many were slain for the act of another. At length they saw a fair fortress, built above a vale; the damsel told him there was no other place near where he could lodge that night, and they made up to it. At the gate they found many men and dames and damsels, so that it seemed to be the house of a good man, and among them was a knight of seventy years, with a cloak of scarlet skin, who courteously bade him welcome. Sir, quoth Galaor, you welcome us so well, that, tho' we found another host, we would not leave your hospitality. Then were

they led into a hall, and supper was given them right honourably ; and, when the cloths were removed, the old knight went to Galaor and asked him if the damsel was to be his bedfellow. He replied, No ; and two damsels then conducted her to her chamber, while he was shown a rich bed for himself. Here rest yourself, said his host : God knows the pleasure I have in entertaining you, and all errant knights, for I myself have been one, and have two sons who are the like, but both now are badly wounded, for there came by a knight who dismounted them both, and they greatly ashamed of their foil rode after him, and came up to him by a river as he was about to cross it in a boat ; and they would have made him do battle with the sword, since they knew how he could joust. The knight, who was in haste, would have declined the battle, but my sons prevented him from entering the boat. A lady who was in the boat then said to them, that they were discourteous in detaining her knight against her will ; but they said, He must needs do battle. Let it be, then, said the lady, that he shall fight with the better of you twain, and if he shall conquer him that shall suffice. Not so, they answered ; if one failed, the other would prove his fortune. The knight then grew angry, and cried, Come both, since you will not let me proceed ! and one after the other he sent them from their horses, utterly confounded ; then crossed the river and went his way. I went afterwards to bring home my sons for they were sorely wounded : you shall see with what wounds, such as never before were given by any knight. He then sent for the armour which they had worn, and it was so cut through with the sword that Galaor greatly marvelled, and asked what arms the knight bore.—A

vermilion shield with two grey lions, and another on his helmet, and he rides a roan horse. Know you who he is? cried Galaor, No, said the old knight. It is the same knight whom I am seeking, quoth Galaor, and, if I find him, I will revenge your two sons and myself, or die. Sir friend, quoth his host, I would counsel you to forbear the attempt, for as for what my sons have suffered they brought it on themselves; and then he bade him good night.

The next morning Galaor and his guide departed; they crossed the river in the boat, and proceeding about five leagues came to a fortress. Wait for me a little, said the damsel; I will be here presently: and she entered the castle. Presently she returned, bringing with her another damsel and ten knights on horseback; and that other damsel, who was passing fair, said to Galaor, Sir, my cousin tells me you are in quest of the knight who bears two grey lions in a vermilion shield, that you may know who he is; but I tell you that you cannot learn by force, for there is no knight like him in all the islands, and he will neither tell you nor any other for three years, unless it be forced from him. Damsel, said Galaor, I shall not cease my enquiry, and would rather learn his name by force than by other means. Since that be so, said she, within three days I will bring you to him, at my cousin's request. They set forth, and by vespers time came to an arm of the sea that clipped round an island, so that there was full three leagues of water to cross; a bark was ready at the harbour, but before they entered it an oath was demanded, that there was only one knight in company. Why is this oath required? said Galaor. The damsel replied, The lady of the island will have it so; when one knight has

crost over, no other is suffered to come till the first return or is slain.—Who is it that kills or conquers them?—The knight whom you are seeking ; he has been here half a year, and by this occasion : a turney was held here by the lady of the island, and another dame of great beauty ; this knight came hither from a foreign land, and being on her side won the victory. Whereat she was so pleased, that she never rested till she had won him for her paramour ; but because he is desirous of seeking adventures, the lady, to detain him with her, invites knights to joust against him. If by chance they are slain, they are there interred ; otherwise, they are sent back, and he gives their arms and horses to his mistress. She is a full fair lady, and her name Corisanda ; the island is called Gravisanda. How came he, said Galaor, to keep the forest ? It was a boon asked of him by a damsel, said she, tho' his mistress hardly permitted him to perform it.

By this they had reached the island ; the night was some way advanced, but it was clear moonlight, the damsel had two tents pitched beside a little brook, and there they supped, and rested till the morning. Galaor would fain have shared the damsel's tent, but to that, albeit, she thought him the fairest of all knights and much delighted in his conversation, she would not consent. In the morning they set forward, and he asked his guide if she knew the knight's name ? —Neither man nor woman in all this land know it, except his mistress. Then was Galaor the more curious that one of such worth in arms should so conceal himself. Presently they saw a castle on a height, surrounded for a league on all sides by a rich plain. In that castle, quoth the damsel, is he whom you seek. Having advanced farther, they found a stone

pillar curiously wrought, and a horn upon it. Sound that horn, said she, and you shall presently see the knight. Galaor blew the horn, and forthwith there came certain men from the castle, and pitched a tent in the meadow before the gate, and then there issued out ten dames and damsels, and in the midst of them one richly clad, who was the lady of the rest. Why does the knight tarry? quoth Galaor, who saw all this. The damsel answered, he will not come till the lady send for him. I beseech you then, said he, go to her and request her to summon him, for I have much to do elsewhere and cannot tarry. When the lady heard this errand, What ! cried she, holds he our knight so cheap that he already thinks of doing ought elsewhere? he will depart sooner than he thinks, and more to his cost. Then she turned to her man : Go, call the strange knight. Anon he came from the castle, armed and afoot ; his men led his horse, and carried his shield and lance and helmet, and he went straight to his mistress. You see a foolish knight yonder, said she, who thinks lightly to take his leave of you : I desire you would make him know his foolishness ! and then she embraced and kissed him. All this made Galaor the more angry.

The knight mounted, and slowly rode down the height. Galaor was ready as soon as he saw him in the level, and bade him defend himself : they ran at each other ; both lances were broken, both shields pierced, both knights deeply wounded. Don Galaor drew his sword : the stranger said to him, Knight, by the faith you owe to God, and to the thing you love best, let us joust once more ! You conjure me so, said Galaor, that I will do it, but I am sorry my horse is not so good as yours, else we would joust till one

of us fell, or till all your lances were broken ! The knight made no answer, but called to his squire for two lances, and sent the one to Galaor. Again they encountered : Galaor's horse came on his knees and tottered, and was almost down ; the stranger lost both his stirrups, and was fain to hold round the neck of his horse. Galaor spurred up his, and had now sword in hand ; thereat, the stranger, somewhat abashed, exclaimed, You are desirous to do combat with the sword ; certes, I fear it rather for you than for myself : if you do not believe me, you shall see. Do your worst ! quoth Galaor : I will either die, or revenge those whom you left in the forest. Then the stranger recollected that it was he who had defied him on foot, and he answered him angrily, Revenge yourself if you can, but I rather think you will carry back one shame upon another.

The ladies, seeing how gallantly they had jousted, thought they would then have accorded, but when they saw the sword-battle, they were greatly amazed at the fury with which it was begun. Such mortal blows they gave each other, that the head was often made to bow upon the breast, and the steel* arches of the helmets were cut through, and their trappings, and the sword went through the linings and was felt upon the head ; and the field was strewn with the fragments of their shields and their broken mail. This continued long, till each wondered that his antagonist could hold out. Galaor's horse at last began to fail him, and could scarcely move, whereat he waxed exceeding wroth, thinking that only this de-

* Cortando de los yelmos los arcos de azero con parte de las faldas dellos, assi qui las espadas descendian, a los almofares, y las sentian en las cabeças.

layed his victory, for the stranger could lightly come on, and withdraw again from his blows. Galaor, when indeed he did reach him, made him feel the sword, but his horse tottered as if he had been blind, and he began to fear his own death more than he had ever done before in any battle, save in that with his brother Amadis, for from that he never expected to leave off alive. Next to Amadis, he thought this the best knight he had ever encountered, albeit he doubted not of conquering him, were it not for the fault of his horse. Being in this strait, he called out, Knight! either finish the battle on foot, or give me another horse, or else I will slay yours, and that villainy will be your fault. Do your worst! replied the stranger: the battle shall not be delayed; it is a great shame that it hath lasted so long. Look to your horse then! quoth Galaor. The knight rode close to him, fearing for his horse; so close, that Galaor caught him with both arms, and at the same instant spurred his own horse violently, and they both fell upon the ground, each holding his sword, and there they struggled for some time before they released each other. But, when they rose, they attacked again so furiously as if the battle were but then beginning; there was not a moment's respite, now that they could freely close or strike. As the fight continued Galaor perceived he was gaining the better, for his enemy's strength evidently weakened: Good knight? quoth he, hold a while! whereat the other paused, being indeed in need of rest. You see, quoth Galaor, that I have the better of the battle; tell me your name, and why you so carefully conceal yourself, and I will acquit you from the combat and shall receive great pleasure; but unless you do this I will not leave you. Certes, quoth

the knight, I shall not leave off with these conditions: I never found myself so hardy in any battle as in this, and God forbid that any single knight should ever know me, except to my great honour. Be not rash, cried Galaor; by my faith I swear never to let you go till I know who you are, and why you conceal yourself. God never help me, quoth the stranger, if ever you learn it from me: I will rather perish in battle than tell it, except to two knights, to whom, tho' I know them not, I neither could nor ought to deny any thing. Who are they whom you value so much? quoth Galaor. Neither shall you know that, replied the stranger, because it seems that it would please you. Certes, rejoined Galaor; I will know what I ask, or one of us, or both, shall die. I am not averse to that, quoth his enemy. Then they renewed the combat with full fury; but the stranger waxed weaker, his armour was every where laid open and streaming with blood, till at last the lady of the island ran like one frantic to Galaor, and cried, Hold, knight! would the bark had been sunk that brought thee hither! Lady, said he, if it offends you that I am avenging myself, and one who is better than myself, the fault is not mine. Offer him no more harm, quoth she, or you shall die by the hands of one who will have no mercy. He answered, I know not how that may turn out, but I will not leave him till I know what I have asked.—And what is that?—His name, and why he conceals it? and who the two knights are whom he esteems above the rest of the world. She answered, A curse upon him who taught you to strike, and upon you who have learnt so well! I will tell you: his name is Don Florestan; he conceals himself because he hath two brothers in this land of such passing

worth in arms, that, albeit you have proved his prowess, he dares not make himself known to them, till, by his fame, he is worthy to join them ; and these two knights are in the household of King Lisuarte, the one is called Amadis, the other Don Galaor, and they are all three sons of King Perion. Holy Mary ! cried Galaor, what have I done ? and then he presented his sword to Florestan : Good brother, take my sword, and the honour of the battle !—Are you my brother ? —I am your brother Don Galaor. Then Florestan fell on his knees before him, saying, Sir, pardon me ! for this offence that I have committed in combatting against you, was caused by no other reason than that I durst not name myself your brother, as I am, till I had somewhat resembled you in prowess. Galaor raised him up, and took him in his arms, and wept over him for joy, and for sorrow to see him so sorely wounded.

But the lady beholding all this was greatly rejoiced. Sir, quoth she, if you gave me great anguish you have repaid it with double pleasure. They were then both carried into the castle and laid in bed, both in one apartment, and Corisanda, being skilful in chirurgery, looked to their wounds herself with great care ; for she knew that if the one died, the other would die also for pure sorrow, and her own life would be doubtful if Florestan were in great danger.

CHAP. XLIII.—Showing how Don Florestan was the son of King Perion by a fair damsel, daughter to the Count of Selandia.



HIS valiant and hardy knight, Don Florestan, you should know how and in what land he was begotten, and by whom. Know then that when King Perion, being a young man and of good heart, sought adventures, he passed two years in Germany, doing great deeds in arms, and as he was returning with great glory to his own land, he lodged one day with the Count of Selandia, where he was right worshipfully entertained, and at night he was shewn to a rich bed, and there being weary with his journey fell asleep. Ere long he felt a damsel embracing him, and her mouth joined to his ; and, waking thereat, was drawing back, but she cried out, How is this, sir ? would you rather be alone in the bed ? The king then looked at her by his chamber-light, and saw the fairest woman that ever he saw : tell me, quoth he, who you are ? She answered, one that loves you, and gives you her love.—First tell me your name ?—Why do you distress me with the question ?—I must know.—I am the Count's daughter. Then the king said, It becomes not a woman of your rank to commit this folly : I tell you I will not do this wrong to your father. Ah, quoth she, ill betide those who praise your goodness ! you are the worst man in the world, and the most discourteous ! what goodness can there be in you when you thrust away a fair lady of such lineage ? King Perion answered, I shall do that which is to your honour and my own, not what would injure both. Then, quoth she, I will do that which shall grieve my father more, than if you consent to my will.

and she leapt up and took King Perion's sword, that same sword which was laid in the ark with Amadis, and unsheathed it, and placed the point against her heart :—Will not my father grieve more for my death? When the king saw that, he was greatly astonished, and he sprang from the bed, crying, hold! I will perform your will! and he snatched the sword from her, and that night she became pregnant. On the morrow Perion departed, and never saw her more.

She, so long as she could, concealed her situation, and when the time drew nigh contrived to go visit her aunt, with one damsel; but as she was passing through a forest her pains came on her, and she alighted from her palfrey, and there brought forth a son. The damsel seeing her in this plight, put the baby to her breast. Now, lady, said she, the same courage that you showed in sinning, show now in supporting yourself till I return; and then she mounted her palfrey, and rode on as fast as she could to the aunt's castle, and told her all that had happened. The dame was greatly troubled, yet delayed not for that to succour her, but went forthwith with a litter, wherein she used to visit her brother to shade her from the sun; and when she saw her niece she alighted, and wept with her, and had her placed with the infant in the litter, and taken by night into the castle, and enjoined secrecy to all who were with her. So the mother returned after her recovery to the Count's castle, and nothing was known of what had passed, and the boy was educated till he was of eighteen years, a braver youth, and better limbed than any other in the district; and the dame his aunt seeing this gave him horse and arms, and took him to the Count to knight him, who knew not

that he whom he was knighting was his own grandson.

As they were returning, the dame told him the secret of his birth, and said he ought to go seek his father and make himself known to him. Certes, lady, quoth he, I have often heard of King Perion, but never thought he was my father ; but by the faith I owe to God, and to you who have brought me up, neither he nor any one else shall know who I am, till they can say that I am worthy to be the son of so good a man. Then taking his leave, he went with two squires to Constantinople, where he heard there was a cruel war ; there he remained four years, and did such deeds in arms as never knight had wrought before in those parts, so that at the end of that time he determined to go and discover himself to his father. But as he drew nearer France, he heard the fame of Amadis and Galaor, who were now beginning to work wonders, so that he changed his first intention, and resolved to gain more honour in Great Britain, where there were more good knights than in any part of the world, and that he would not make himself known till his prowess had given him sufficient renown : in which mind he continued till his combat with Galaor, as you have heard.

Amadis and Agrayes remained five days at the castle of Torin ; then all things being prepared, they set forward with Briolania and her aunt, who took with them two damsels and five serving-men, on horseback and three palfreys laden with apparel, for Briolania went in black, and would wear nothing else till her father's death was avenged. As they began their journey Briolania requested a boon of Amadis, and her aunt another of Agrayes ; the which they granted, without knowing what it might be : they then demanded, that,

let what would happen, the knights should not leave the road, that so their present quest might not be interrupted. Much did they repent their promise, and great shame did they endure thereby, for in many places was their succour needed, and rightly might they have bestirred themselves if they had been at liberty. Thus they travelled twelve days before they entered the kingdom of Sobradisa ; it was night when they reached it : they left the high road, and struck by a by-way for three leagues ; and then, great part of the night being past, they came to a little castle, where a lady dwelt named Galumba, who had served in the court of the king, Briolania's father. She right joyfully admitted them, and set supper before them, and provided their night's entertainment ; and the next morning asked the aunt whither they were going. A joyful woman was she, hearing that those knights were going to revenge her master's death ; but I fear, said she, lest that traitor should destroy them by some deceit : for that reason, said the old lady, am I come to consult with you. Leave it to me, quoth Galumba. Then she took ink and parchment, and wrote a letter, and sealed it with Briolania's seal, and gave it to a damsel, and directed her what she should do. The damsel mounted her palfrey, and rode on till she came to the great city of Sobradisa, from whence the whole kingdom took its name. She went directly to the palace of Abiseos, and rode through the gate, being richly apparelled. The knights came around to assist her to dismount ; but she said, No, she would not alight till the king saw her, and commanded her so to do. They then took her bridle, and led her into a hall where the king was, with his sons and many other knights, and he bade her alight if she had any-

thing to say. She answered, I will, sir, on condition that you protect me, and that I shall suffer no injury for any thing that I may say against you, or against any other here. The king assured her that she should be under his protection and royal faith, and bade her deliver what she was come to say. Upon that she alighted, and said, Sir, I bring a message which must be delivered in the presence of all the chiefs of your realm: summon them, and it shall be made known. Quoth Abiseos, it is as you would wish: they are already in my court, and have been assembled on business these six days. Call them together, said she. Forthwith they were summoned, and being all met, the damsel then said, King, Briolania, she whom you disherited, sends you this letter, to be read before this assembly. When Abiseos heard the name of his niece he was touched with shame, remembering the wrong he had wrought her; yet, the letter was openly read, which was to give credit to the damsel's words. To this he only replied, That they were not to believe what the damsel might say on Briolania's behalf: but the people of the realm who were there present were moved with great compassion at the name of their lawful lady, who was so unjustly dispossessed, and they besought God secretly that he would no longer suffer so great a treason to remain unpunished. Give your errand, quoth the king. Sir king, said the damsel, it is true that you killed the father of Briolania, and have disherited her of her kingdom; and you have often declared, that you and your sons would justify what you have done by force of arms. Briolania now sends to say, that if you hold your word she will bring here two knights who will undertake the battle in her cause, and make you know your treason and

great tyranny. When Darasion, the eldest of the sons heard this, he arose in great anger, being of a hot nature, and without his father's permission replied, Damsel, if Briolania has these knights, I promise the combat for myself, and for my father and brother; and, if I do not perform this, I promise before all these knights to give my head to her, that she may take it in requital of her father's. Certes Darasion, answered the damsel, you answer like a knight of great courage, yet may I doubt your words to proceed from choler, for I see you are enraged; but if you will obtain from the king an assurance of your words, I shall think they proceed from that great worth and hardihood which are in you. What would you have? quoth he. Cause the king, she replied, to give our knights assurance that, for any mishap which you may receive in the battle, they shall sustain no injury from any in this land, nor be meddled withal but by you three: give them this safe conduct, and they will be here within three days. Darasion knelt down before his father;— You see, sir, what the damsel requests, and what I have promised; and, because my honour is yours, let it be granted, else they will without danger have put us to shame, for we have always avowed that if any one attainted your deeds we would justify it in battle; and even without the promise we ought to accept the defiance, for they tell me these knights are some of King Lisuarte's rash household, whose pride and folly makes them magnify their own worth and despise all others. The king, albeit he felt himself guilty of his brother's murder, and dreaded the battle, yet, because he loved his son as he did himself, gave the safe conduct as the damsel had demanded, the hour appointed by the Most High being come. The damsel having accom-

plished this, said, Hold yourselves ready, for to-morrow the knights will be here. And then she mounted her palfrey, and departed.

Much were the ladies and the knights rejoiced at the success of her embassy. When Amadis heard that Darasion held them as fools, because they were of King Lisuarte's household, he grew angry, and exclaimed, There are those in that household who could easily break his pride, and his head too ! but when he had said this, he was ashamed that he had been so mastered by anger. Briolania, who could not keep her eyes off him observed this, and said, You cannot, sir, either say or do anything against those traitors which they have not deserved, and worse : have pity on me, since you know my father's murder, and my wrongs : my trust is in God and in you. Amadis whose heart was submiss to virtue and all gentleness, moved with pity for that fair damsel, answered, If God be so pleased lady, I ween that ere to-morrow night your sorrow will be turned into joy. Then Briolania would, for thankfulness, have humbled herself to have kissed his feet, but he drew back abashed, and Agrayes raised her up. They determined to set forward by day-break, and hear mass at the chapel of the Three Fountains, which was half a league from Sobradisa.

That night they made good cheer, and Briolania, who talked much with Amadis, was oftentimes moved to offer marriage to him, but seeing his frequent reveries, and the tears that sometimes fell down his cheeks, which she knew proceeded from no fear in his brave heart, she suspected that he loved elsewhere, and so refrained. At dawn they all departed ; and arriving at the Three Fountains, heard mass from the

good hermit, who hearing wherefore they were on their way, besought God to speed them well in the battle, as he knew their cause was right. There they armed themselves all save the head and hands, and so proceeded to the city. Without the walls they found King Abiseos and his sons, and a great company attending them: the people all flocked towards Briolania, whom in their hearts they loved, thinking her their rightful and natural lady. Amadis led her bridle, and uncovered her face,* that all might see her how beautiful she was: she was weeping, and the multitude blessed her in their hearts, and prayed that she might now be restored to her rights. Abiseos dissembled a feeling from which neither his ambition nor his wickedness could shield him, and seeing how the people flocked round Briolania, he exclaimed, Fools, I see how you rejoice in her sight! but it is to your honour and safety that a knight like me should protect you, not a weak woman, who in so long a time has only been able to get these two knights for her champions; whom, because they are thus deceitfully brought to their death, or dishonour, I cannot forbear to pity. These words so kindled the indignation of Amadis, that blood seemed starting from his eyes; he rose in his stirrups that all might hear him, and answered King Abiseos, I well see how the coming of Briolania troubles you, because you have murdered her father, who was your king and brother: if there be yet virtue enough in you to resign to her what is her own, I will excuse the battle, that you may have leisure for repentance, that, though you have lost your honour in this world, you may save your soul. Before

* *Quitole los antifazes.*—She was muffled in the Moorish manner, not veiled.

the king could reply, Darasion exclaimed, Thou foolish knight of King Lisuarte's court ! I never thought I could endure to hear a speech like thine : come on ! and if your heart fails, you cannot fly where I cannot reach you with such a vengeance, that none can behold it without compassion. Arm thyself, traitor, and do battle ! quoth Agrayes. Darasion answered, say what thou wilt now ! presently I will send thy tongue without thy body to King Lisuarte's court, as a warning to all such fools ! Then they armed themselves ; and Amadis and Agrayes laced on their helmets, and took their shields and spears, and entered the place which had been of yore marked out for such trials. Dramis, the second son, who was so good a knight that no two knights of that country could keep the field against him, said to his father, Sir, where you and my brother are present, I might well be excused from speaking ; but now I have to act with that strength which I have received from God and you. Leave that knight who has reviled you to me : If I do not slay him with the first lance-thrust, may I never again bear arms ! or if it be his good fortune that the spear does not strike right, the first blow with the sword shall do it. There were many who heard this speech, and did not think it vain boasting, he was of such exceeding strength. Darasion looked round the lists : How is this ? quoth he ; ye are but two ! hath the heart of the third failed him ? call him to come directly, for we will not tarry. Trouble not yourself about the third, said Amadis, you will presently wish the second away : now look to your defence !

They placed their shields before them, and gave their horses the rein. Dramis ran right at Amadis

and pierced his shield and broke his lance against his side ; but Amadis smote him so roughly, that the spear went through his shield, and, without piercing his breast-plate, burst his heart within him, and he fell like the fall of a tower. In God's name, cried Ardian the Dwarf, my master's deed is better than his word ! The other twain ran at Agrayes : he and Darasion broke their lances upon each other, and both kept their seats. Abiseos failed in his course ; he saw Dramis on the ground, and in great grief, albeit he did not suppose him to be dead, ran full at Amadis, and pierced his shield, and broke the lance in his arm, so that all thought he could not continue the battle. Well may you think how Briolania felt at that ; her heart sunk, and the sight of her eyes failed her, and without support she would have fallen from her palfrey. But he, who was not to be dismayed by such wounds, graspt well that good sword which he had so lately recovered from Arcalaus, and struck Abiseos upon the helm ; through helm it went, and slanted down the head, and pierced into the shoulder ; a slant wound, but so staggering that Abiseos tottered on his seat, and fell, half senseless. Then he of Gaul rode up to Darasion, who was close engaged with Agrayes :—Now Darasion, you had rather the second were absent, than that the third were come ! Agrayes cried out to him to hold :—Cousin, you have done enough, leave me this man who has threatened to cut out my tongue. Amadis did not hear him ; he had made a blow which sliced off a part of the shield, and came through the pummel of the saddle to the horse's neck ; but Darasion as he past, ran his sword into the belly of Amadis's horse ; the horse instantly ran away ; the reins broke in the rider's hand, and

Amadis seeing that he had no remedy, and that he should be carried out of the lists, struck the beast between the ears with his sword, and split his head ; the fall bruised him sorely, but he arose, and turned to Abiseos.

At this time Agrayes had driven his sword into Darasion's helmet, so that he could not recover it. Darasion had forced it from his hand, and was driving at him. Agrayes grappled him ; they fell together and struggled on the ground. Abiseos came up, and was lifting the skirts of his armour to thrust his sword into him. Amadis came up in time. The king was compelled to look to his own safety ; he lifted his shield, the blow dashed shield against helmet, and made him reel. Agrayes and Darasion had loosed each other : Agrayes caught up Darasion's sword ; Darasion plucked the other from his helm, and ran towards his father. Amadis saw that Agrayes was all bloody from a wound in his neck, and fearing it was mortal, he cried, Leave them to me, good cousin, and rest yourself ! I have no wound, quoth Agrayes, to keep me from aiding you : see if it be so ! Have at them, then ! cried Amadis ; but the fear he felt for his cousin gave him such anger, that presently his enemies, their armour all hacked, and their flesh too, began to turn here and there disorderly, and with the fear of death. So it continued till the hour of tierce, when Abiseos, seeing death before him, lifted his sword in both hands, and ran desperately at Amadis, and gave him a blow, such as might not be looked for from a man so wounded : it cut away the brim of the helmet, and the shoulder mail and a part of the flesh with it. Amadis felt it sorely, and did not delay to give him his wages : he struck his shoulder, and

lopt off that arm with which he had murdered his own king and brother ; arm and shoulder he lopt off, and cried out, That arm brought thee by treason to the throne, and it now brings thee to death and the depth of hell ! The king had fallen in the pangs of death. Amadis looked round him, and saw that Agrayes had smitten off the head of Darasion. Then the people of the land went joyfully to kiss the hand of Briolania their* lady.

The conquerors dragged their enemies out of the lists. Amadis, though he was much wounded, would not disarm himself till he knew if there were any to gainsay Briolania's right. But one of the chiefs of the realm, by name Goman, came before him with an hundred men of his lineage and household, and they declared that they had only endured the usurpation of Abiseos because they had no remedy : now God had delivered them, they were in that loyalty and vassallage which they owed to Briolania. Within eight days all the kingdom came joyfully to do homage to her. Amadis meantime was laid in bed, and that fair queen never left him but when she went to sleep herself. Agrayes, who was dangerously wounded, was put under the care of a skilful man, who suffered none to approach him, that he might not speak, for the wound was in his throat.

* There follows in the original a page of advice to all wicked kings and rulers.

CHAP. XLIV.—How Don Galaor and Florestan, going towards the kingdom of Sobradisa, met three Damsels at the Fountain of the Elm Trees.

DON GALAOR and Florestan remained in the castle of Corisanda till their wounds were well healed, then took they their departure ; but Corisanda made such sorrow that it was pitiful to see her, albeit Florestan comforted her, and assured her of his speedy return. They crossed to the mainland, and proceeded towards Sobradisa, hoping to arrive there before the battle. Brother, quoth Florestan, as they rode along, grant me a boon for courtesy. Sir, and good brother, cried Galaor, is it a thing that I shall repent ? You will not repent it, said Florestan.—Ask it then ; for what I can grant without shame, I shall grant with good will.—I ask then, that you will attempt no combat in this journey till I have tried my fortune. Certes, quoth Galaor, I repent. Not so, replied Florestan, for if there be any worth in me, it is to your honour as well as to mine. Four days they rode without adventure ; on the fifth at evening they came to a tower. A knight, who stood at the court-gate, courteously invited them for the night ; and there were they worshipfully entertained. The knight their host, was a fair knight and a wise, and of goodly stature ; but oftentimes he appeared so lost in thought and sadness, that the brethren asked each other what it might mean, and Don Galaor at last said to him, Sir, methinks you are not so chearful as you should be ! if your sadness is for any cause which our aid can remedy, tell us, and we will do your will. Many thanks replied he of the tower : I believe you would do so like good knights :

but my sadness proceeds from the force of love, and I will not tell you more now, for it would be to my own great shame. The hour of sleeping came on; their host went to his apartment, and the brethren remained in a handsome chamber where there were two beds. In the morning he rode to bear them company, but unarmed; and, that he might see whether they were such in arms as their appearance bespoke them, he led them not along the high road, but through bye ways, till they came to a place called the fountain of the Three Elms, for there were three great and lofty elm-trees above the fountain. Three fair damsels and well apparelled, were by the fountain, and there was a dwarf aloft in the trees. Florestan went first and saluted them gently, as a courteous man, and one who had been gently bred. God save you, sir knight, quoth the one; if you are as brave as you are handsome, God hath gifted you well. Damsel, he replied, if my beauty pleaseth you, my courage would please you more if it were put to proof. You answer well, quoth she: see now, if your courage be enough to carry me from hence.— Certes, quoth Florestan, little goodness is enough for that; since it is your pleasure, I will do it.—He then bade his squires place her upon a palfrey which was tied to one of the elms: when the dwarf, who was sitting up in the tree, cried out aloud, Come forth, knights, come forth! they are carrying away your mistress! At these words a knight, well armed and on a great horse, came up from the valley, and cried out to Florestan, Knight! who bid you lay your hands upon that damsel? I do not think she can be yours, replied Florestan, seeing of her own will she desired me to carry her hence. The knight answered, Though

she consent, I do not ; and I have 'defended her against better than you.—I know not how that may be, but unless you act up to your words, carry her away I will !—Learn first what the knights of the valley are, and how they defend their mistresses ! With that they ran at each other, and Florestan smote his shield so strongly against his helmet that the laces brake, and the helmet came off. The knight could not keep his seat ; he fell upon his sword, and broke it in two. Florestan turned his horse and pointed his lance at him :—You are dead, unless you yield the damsel ! I yield her, quoth he, and cursed be she, and the day wherein I first beheld her, for she made me commit so many follies that at last I have destroyed myself. Florestan left him, and went to the damsel, saying, You are mine ! You have well won me, quoth she, and may do with me as you please. Let us go then ! said he ; but one of the other damsels then said to him, Sir knight, you are parting good company ; we have been a year together, and it grieves us to be separated. Said Florestan, If you chuse to go in my company I will take you also, otherwise you must be separated, for I will not leave so fair a damsel as this. And if she be fair, quoth the damsel, neither do I esteem myself so ugly, but that knight should venture something for me also ; but I believe you are not of that temper. What ! cried he, think you that I would leave you here for fear ? so help me as I would have done so only to respect your free will, but you shall see. He bade the squires place her also on her palfrey, and the dwarf, who sate up aloft, cried out again for help.

Presently there came another knight from the valley, and said to Florestan, Don Cavalier, you have

won one damsel, and, not content with her, you would carry off another ; you must, therefore, lose both, and your head too ; for it is not fit that a knight of such degree as you should have in your keeping a damsel of such rank. You praise yourself bountifully, quoth Florestan ; yet had I rather have two knights of my kin for my helpers than thee ! I neither regard thee nor them, said the knight : you have won this damsel from him who could not defend her ; if I conquer thee, she shall be mine ; if the victory is yours, you shall take the other whom I defend. Content, quoth Florestan. Defend yourself now, if you can ! said he of the valley ; and they ran their encounter. The knight pierced through Florestan's shield, and broke his lance against the strong mail. Florestan failed in the race : ashamed at that, when the knight had taken from his squire another lance, he ran again, and pierced the shield of his antagonist and the arm that held it, and drove him back upon the crupper of his horse ; the horse reared and threw him, and the ground being hard, he neither moved hand nor foot. Damsel, said Florestan, you are mine ; for methinks your friend can neither help you nor himself. So it seems, quoth she.

Florestan looked at the other damsel, who now remained alone by the fountain, and saw that she was very sad. Damsel, said he, if it please you, I will not leave you here alone. She did not answer him, but said to his host, Go from hence, I counsel you ! you know that these knights are not enough to protect you from him who will presently be here, and, if he take you, you are sure to die. I will see what may happen, he answered, my horse is swift, and my tower at hand. Ah, said she, take care of yourself ; ye are

but three, and you unarmed, and you well know that is nothing against him. When Florestan heard this, he became more desirous to carry away that damsel, and see him whom she praised so greatly. So he had her also placed on her palfrey; and the dwarf, who sate up aloft, said, Don Cavalier, in an ill hour are you so bold: here comes one who shall take vengeance for all! and then he shouted out, Help! help, sir, you linger too long! Presently there came another knight from the same valley; his armour was inlaid with gold, and he rode upon a bay horse, big enough for a giant. Two squires came after him, armed with corselets and morions like serving men, and each carried a huge battle-axe in his hand, in the use of which weapon their master prided himself. He cried out to Florestan, Stay, knight, and seek not to fly, for it will not save you: die you must, and it is better die like a brave man, than like a coward! When Florestan heard himself threatened, he waxed wondrous angry, and cried out, come on, wretch and rascal, and clumsy fool!* So help me God, as I fear thee no more than a great cowardly beast. Ah, quoth the knight, how it grieves me that I cannot wreak sufficient vengeance upon thee! would that the best four of thy lineage were here, that I might cut off their heads with thine! Protect yourself from one, cried Florestan, you may dispense with the rest. Then, being both greatly incensed, they ran at each other, and the shields and the mails of both were pierced with the violence of the encounter: the large knight lost both his stirrups, and was fain to save himself by clinging round his horse's neck. Florestan,

* Ven cativa cosa, y mala, y fuera de razon, sin talle.
The language of vituperation is not easily translatable.

as he past on, caught at one of the battle-axes, and plucked it with such force from the squire who held it, that both the man and his horse were brought to the ground. The knight of the valley had recovered his seat, and was ready with the other battle-axe, and Florestan made at him with equal arms: both struck at once, each on the helmet of his enemy; the axes went in three fingers' depth. Florestan bowed his face upon his breast with the weight of the blow: the knight fell upon the neck of his horse, and the axe, being fast in the other's helmet, slipt from his hand; before he could raise himself, Florestan smote him as he lay between the helm and gorget, so that his head fell at the horse's feet. This done, he turned to the damsels. Certes, good knight, quoth the first of them, I once thought that not ten such as you could have won us.

The young knight, their host, then came up to Florestan, and said, Sir, I love this damsel dearly, and she loves me. It is a year since this knight whom you have slain hath forcibly detained her, so that I could not see her: now, that I may receive her from your hands, I beseech you refuse me not. My host, quoth Florestan, of a truth I will right gladly aid you, if it be as you say; but against her will I will yield her to none. Ah, sir, cried the damsel, this is with my will! I beseech you give me to him: he is my true love. Florestan answered, In God's name, dispose of yourself as you like best! and she went joyfully to her true love. Galaor then gave his horse to their friend, and took the bay horse of the dead knight, which was the handsomest he had ever seen, and then they separated. The two damsels whom Florestan had won, were young and fair; he took the

one to himself, and gave the other to Galaor : I give you to this knight, said he, and command you to do as he pleases. What ! quoth she, do you give me to this knight, who has not the heart of a woman ? who stood by and saw you in such danger, and did not help you ? Damsel, answered Florestan, by my faith to God and to you, I swear that I give you to the best knight whom I know in the world, except it be Amadis my lord. The damsel then looked at Galaor, and seeing him so handsome, and so young, she marvelled at his worth, and granted him her love. That night they had their lodging at the house of a lady, sister to their last night's host. On the morrow they resumed their road, and said to their fair friends, we have a long journey to perform thro' foreign lands, where you would endure many hardships in following us : tell us where you would like best to go, and there we will conduct you. They replied, that their aunt had a castle four days journey on that road whither they would go. As they proceeded, Galaor asked his damsel how she came into the power of those knights. She answered, That great knight who was slain loved the damsel who went with your host, but she hated him. He took her by force, for he was the best knight in all these parts, and none could gainsay him, yet would she never yield him her love ; and he, for the affection he bore her, withheld from offering her any wrong ; and he said to her, My fair friend, great reason is it that I should be loved by you, being the best knight in the world. Now I will do this for your sake : there is a knight who is called the best that ever was, Amadis of Gaul by name, and he slew my cousin Dardan in King Lisuarte's court ; I will find him, and cut off his head, and then shall I inherit all

his renown. Till I do this, I will give you two of the fairest damsels in all this land for your companions, and they shall have the two best knights of my lineage for their friends ; and you shall every day be taken to the fountain of the Three Elms, where many errant knights pass, that you may see brave jousting, and learn to love me as I love you. He then took us by force, and gave us to his kinsmen, and thus had we past a year, till Don Florestan broke the bonds. That knight, quoth Galaor, had a haughty mind : what was his name ? Alumas, she answered ; and, if it had not been for his exceeding pride, he was of great prowess. Thus they proceeded till they reached the Lady's castle, who thankfully entertained them, because they had delivered her nieces from Alumas and his kinsmen, who had forcibly and dishonourably detained them.

Galaor and Florestan proceeded till they reached the kingdom of Sobradisa, and there heard the joyful tidings of what their brother and Agrayes had done. They hastened to the city, and went immediately to the palace, where Amadis and his cousin, now whole of their wounds, were conversing with the new queen. Amadis, from the damsel who had guided Galaor, knew who they were, and went to welcome Florestan with tears of joy, embracing and kissing him who would have knelt before him. But when Briolania saw four such knights in her palace, and recollected how powerful she now was, and how lately she had lived, not without fear, in a single castle, she knelt down, and thanked the Most High for the mercy he had vouchsafed her. Of a truth, sirs, said she, these changes are the work of him, before whom the mightiest are nothing ; but for this dominion, and this

wealth, which we suffer so much anxiety and trouble to gain, and having gained, to keep; would it be better, as being neither certain nor durable in themselves, and as things superfluous and destructive to the body, and moreover to the soul,—would it be better to reject and abhor them? Certainly I say, no: and affirm, that, when they are gained with a good conscience, and justly administered, we may enjoy from them comfort and pleasure and joy in this world, and everlasting glory in the next.

*Here endeth the First Book of the noble and virtuous
Knight, Amadis of Gaul.*



Book the Second.

CHAP. I.—Here beginneth the Second Book of Amadis of Gaul; and because the great things which will be related in the Fourth Book concerning Amadis are all relating to the Firm Island, it behoves that in this second it should be related what this island was, and who left those enchantments and the great riches which were therein.

HERE was a king in Greece married to the sister of the emperor of Constantinople, by whom he had two fair sons, especially the elder, named Apolidon, who in his days had no equal for strength of body and courage of heart. He having a subtle genius, which is so seldom found with valour, gave himself to the study of the sciences and of all arts, so that he shone among those of his own time like the moon among the stars; especially he excelled in necromancy, whereby things that appear impossible are done. The king his father was very rich in treasure, but poor in life, by reason of his great age; and seeing himself at the point of death, he commanded that the kingdom should be given to Apolidon, as his eldest son, and his books and treasures to the other. The younger was not contented with this, and told his father so with tears, and complained that he was disherited; but the old man, not knowing what to do, wrung his hands for pure sorrow. Then that famous Apolidon, seeing his father's grief and the littleness of his brother, bade him take comfort,

for he would accept the books and treasure, and relinquish the kingdom to his brother. Whereat the father gave him his blessing with many tears. So Apolidon took his inheritance, and fitted out certain ships, manning them with chosen knights, and set forth into the sea, trusting himself to Fortune, who seeing his great obedience to his father, and how he had thrown himself upon her mercy, resolved to requite him with glory and greatness. A fair wind carried him to the empire of Rome, where Siudan was then emperor, at whose court he abode some time, doing great feats in arms, till there grew a true affection between him and the emperor's sister, Grimanesa, who then flourished among all other women for beauty. So it was that as he was loving, even so was he loved, and as their loves might no other ways be indulged, they left Rome together, and set sail in Apolidon's fleet, and sailed till they came to the Firm Island. There Apolidon landed, not knowing what country it was, and pitched a tent upon the shore, and placed a couch there for his lady, who was weary of the sea. Presently there came down a fierce giant, who was lord of the island, with whom, according to the custom of the place, Apolidon was to do battle for the preservation of his lady and himself, and his company. It ended in such sort that the giant lay dead on the field, and Apolidon remained master of the island. When he had seen its strength, he neither feared the emperor of Rome, whom he had offended, nor all the world besides; and there he and Grimanesa, being greatly beloved by the islanders, whom he had delivered from their oppressor, dwelt in all happiness for sixteen years. During that time many rich edifices were made, as well with his great treasures, as with

his surpassing wisdom, such as it would have been difficult for any emperor or king, how rich soever, to have completed. At the end of that time the emperor of Greece died without an heir, and the Greeks, knowing the great worth of Apolidon, and that by his mother's side he was of the blood and lineage of the emperors, elected him with one common consent to rule over them. He, albeit he was enjoying all possible delights in his own island, yet, with Grimanesa's consent, accepted the empire; but she, before they left the island where she had enjoyed such rare happiness, requested her husband that he would work such a means by his great knowledge, that that island might never be possessed, except by a knight as excellent in arms and loyal in love as himself, and by a dame resembling her in beauty and truth.

Then Apolidon made an arch at the entrance of a garden, wherein there were all kinds of trees, and also four rich chambers, but it was so surrounded that none could enter, except by passing under the arch, over which he placed the image of a man made of copper, holding a trumpet in his mouth as if he would wind it. And in one of the chambers within he placed two figures, in the likeness of himself and his lady, the countenances and the stature like unto them, so true that they seemed alive, and near them he placed a bright stone of jasper; and about the distance of half a cross-bow shot, he made a perron* of iron. Henceforward, said he, no man or woman who hath been false to their first love shall pass here, for yonder

* *Padron* is the Spanish word: the English version renders it pillar, but the word means more; there must be a roof and a flooring. Our market-crosses would be called *padrones*. *Perron* is used in the English *Amadis* of Greece.

image shall blow from that trumpet so dreadful a blast with smoke and flames of fire, that they shall be stunned and cast out as dead. But if knight, or dame, or damsel come, worthy by virtue of true loyalty to finish this adventure, they shall enter without let, and the image shall make a sound so sweet that it shall be delightful to hear, and they shall see our images, and behold their own name written in the jasper. Grimanesa afterwards ordered some of her knights and ladies to make trial, and then the image blew the dreadful blast with smoke and flames of fire ; whereat Grimanesa laughed, knowing them to be in more dread than danger. But yet, my lord, quoth she, what shall be done with that rich chamber wherein we have enjoyed such great contentment ? He answered, You shall see. Then he made two other perrons, one of stone, the other of copper : the stone one was placed five paces from the chamber, the copper one five paces farther off. Know now, said he, that henceforth in no manner, nor at any time, shall man or woman enter this chamber till a knight come who surpasses me in prowess, or a woman exceeding you in beauty ; they shall enter. He then placed these words in the copper perron : Knights shall advance here, each according to his valour ; and in the stone perron, he wrote : Here none shall pass except the knight who exceeds Apolidon in prowess. And over the door of the chamber he wrote : He who surpasses me in prowess shall enter here, and be lord of the island. And he laid such a spell, that none could approach within twelve paces of the chamber round about, nor was there any entrance but by the perrons.

Then he appointed a governor to rule the island, and collect the revenues, which were to be reserved

for the knight who should enter the chamber ; and he commanded that all who failed in attempting to pass the arch of lovers, should, without ceremony, be cast out of the island ; but such as passed through were to be entertained and served with all honour. And farther, he appointed that all knights who attempted the adventure of the forbidden chamber, and did not pass the copper perron should leave their arms there : but from those who advanced any way beyond it, only their swords should be taken. They who reached to the marble perron should leave only their shields, and if they penetrated beyond that, but failed to enter the chamber, they should lose only their spurs. From the dames and damsels who failed, nothing was to be taken, only their names should be placed upon the castle-gate, and an account how far they had advanced. Apolidon then said, When this island shall have another lord, the enchantment shall be dissolved, and all knights may freely pass the perrons and enter the chamber ; but it shall not be free for women, till the fairest shall have come, and lodged in the rich chamber with the lord of the island. These enchantments being thus made, Apolidon and his wife entered their ships, and passed over into Greece, where they reigned during their lives, and left children to succeed them.

CHAP. II.—How Amadis with his brethren and his cousin Agrayes went towards King Lisuarte, and how by adventure they went to the enchanted Firm Island, and of what befel them there.



WHILE Amadis remained with his comrades at the court of Sobradisa, his thoughts were perpetually fixed upon his lady Oriana ; and, so thoughtful was he, and so often, both sleeping and

waking, was he in tears, that all saw how he was troubled, yet knew they not the cause, for he kept his love silent, as a man who had all virtues in his heart. At length, not being able to support a longer absence, he asked permission of the fair young queen to depart, which she not without reluctance having granted, loving him better than herself, he and his brethren and their cousin Agrayes took the road towards King Lisuarte. Some days had they travelled when they came to a little church, and entering there to say their prayers, they saw a fair damsel, accompanied by two others, and by four squires who guarded her, coming from the door. She asked them whither they went. Amadis answered, Damsel, we go to the court of King Lisuarte, where, if it please you to go, we will accompany you. Thank you, quoth the damsel, but I am faring elsewhere. I waited because I saw you were armed like errant knights, to know if any of you would go and see the wonders of the Firm Island, for I am the governor's daughter, and am returning there. Holy Mary! cried Amadis, I have often heard of the wonders of that island, and should account myself happy if I might prove them, yet till now I never prepared to go! Good sir, quoth she, do not repent of your delay; many have gone there with the same wish, and returned not so joyfully as they went. So I have heard, said Amadis: tell me, would it be far out of our road if we went there?—Two days journey.—Is the Firm Island then in this part of the sea, where is the enchanted arch of true lovers, under which neither man nor woman can pass that hath been false to their first love? The damsel answered, It is a certain truth, and many other wonders are there. Then Agrayes said to his companions, I know not what you will do, but

will go with this damsel, and see these wonderful things. If you are so true a lover, said she, as to pass the enchanted arch, you will see the likenesses of Apolidon and Grimanesa, and behold your own name written upon a stone, where you will find only two names written besides, though the spell hath been made an hundred years. In God's name let us go, quoth Agrayes, and I will try whether I can be third. With that, Amadis, who in his heart had no less desire and faith to prove the adventure, said to his brethren, We are not enamoured, but we should keep our cousin company who is, and whose heart is so bold. Thereto they all consented, and set forth with the damsel. What is this island ! said Florestan to Amadis, tell me, sir, for you seem to know. A young knight whom I greatly esteem, replied Amadis, told me all I know ; King Arban of North Wales : he was there four days, but could accomplish none of the adventures, and so departed with shame. The damsel then related the history of the enchantments, which greatly incited Galaor and Florestan to the proof.

So they rode on till sunset, and then entering a valley, they saw many tents pitched in a meadow, and people sporting about them, and one knight, richly apparelled, who seemed to be the chief. Sirs, quoth the damsel, that is my father : I will go advertise him of your coming, that he may do you honour. When he heard of their desire to try the enchantment, he went on foot with all his company to welcome them, and they were honourably feasted and lodged that night. At morning they accompanied the governor to his castle, which commanded the whole island, for at the entrance there was a neck of land, only a bow-shot over, connected with the main land, all the rest was

surrounded by the sea; seven leagues in length it was, and five broad, and because it was all surrounded by the sea, except where that neck of land connected it with the continent, it was called the Firm Island. Having entered, they saw a great palace, the gates whereof were open, and many shields hung upon the wall; about an hundred were in one row, and above them were ten, and above the ten were two, but one of them was in a higher nitch than the other. Then Amadis asked why they were thus ranked. The governor answered, according to the prowess of those who would have entered the forbidden chamber; the shields of those who could not enter the perron of copper, are near the ground; the ten above them are of those who reached it; the lowest of the two passed that perron, and the one above all reached to the marble perron, but could pass no farther. Then Amadis approached the shields to see if he knew them, for each had its owner's name inscribed; the one which was the highest of the ten bore a sable lion, with argent teeth and nails, and a bloody mouth, in a field sable: this he knew to be the shield of Arcalaus. Then he beheld the two uppermost; the lower bore, in a field azure, a knight cutting off the head of a giant; this was the shield of King Abies of Ireland, who had been there two years before his combat with Amadis: the highest had three golden flowers in a field azure: this he knew not, but he read the inscription, This is the shield of Don 'Quadragante, brother to King Abies of Ireland. He had proved the adventure twelve days ago, and had reached the marble perron, which was more than any knight before him had done, and he was now gone to Great Britain to combat Amadis, in revenge for his brother's death. When Amadis saw all these shields,

he doubted the adventure much, seeing that such knights had failed.

They went out from the palace towards the Arch of True Lovers. When they came near, Agrayes alighted and commended himself to God, and cried, Love, if I have been true to thee, remember me ! and he past the spell ; and, when he came under the arch, the image blew forth sweet sounds, and he came to the palace, and saw the likeness of Apolidon and Grimanesa, and saw also the jasper-stone, wherein two names were written, and now his own the third. The first said, Madanil, son of the duke of Burgundy, atchieved this adventure : and the second was, this is the name of Don Bruneo of Bonamar, son to Vallados, Marquis of Troque : and his own said, This is Agrayes, son to King Languines of Scotland. This Madanil loved Guinda, lady of Flanders. Don Bruneo had proved the enchantment but eight days ago, and she whom he loved was Melicia, daughter to King Perion, the sister of Amadis.

When Agrayes had thus entered, Amadis said to his brethren, will ye prove the adventure ? No, said they, we are not so enthralled that we can deserve to accomplish it. Since you are two, then, quoth he, keep one another company, as I, if I can, will do with my cousin Agrayes. Then gave he his horse and arms to Gandalin, and went on without fear, as one who felt that never in deed or in thought had he been faithless to his lady. When he came under the arch, the image began a sound far different and more melodious than nîe had ever before done, and showered down flowers his caeat fragrance from the mouth of the trumpet, the the entralich had never been done before to any knight over, connecte. He past on to the images, and here

Agraves, who apprehended something of his passion, met him and embraced him, and said, Sir, my cousin, there is no reason that we should henceforth conceal from each other our loves. But Amadis made no reply, but taking his hand, they went to survey the beauties of the garden.

Don Galaor and Florestan, who waited for them without, seeing that they tarried, besought Ysanjo, the governor, to shew them the forbidden chamber, and he led them towards the perrons. Sir brother, said Florestan, what will you do? Nothing, replied Galaor: I have no mind to meddle with enchantments. Then amuse yourself here, quoth Florestan, I will try my fortune. He then commended himself to God, threw his shield before him, and proceeded sword in hand. When he entered the spell, he felt himself attacked on all sides with lances and swords, such blows and so many that it might be thought never man could endure them; yet, for he was strong and of good heart, he ceased not to make his way, striking manfully on all sides, and it felt in his hand as though he were striking armed men, and the sword did not cut. Thus struggling, he passed the copper perron, and advanced as far as the marble one, but there his strength failed him, and he fell like one dead, and was cast out beyond the line of the spell. When Galaor saw this he was displeased, and said, However little I like these things, I must take my share in the danger! and bidding the squires and the dwarf to stay by Florestan, and throw cold water in his face, he took his arms and commended himself to God, and advanced towards the forbidden chamber. Immediately the unseen blows fell upon him, but he went on, and forced his way up to the marble perron, and there he stood; but, when he advanced another

step beyond, the blows came on him so heavy a load, that he fell senseless, and was cast out like Florestan.

Amadis and Agrayes were reading the new inscription in the jasper, This is Amadis of Gaul, the true lover, son to King Perion,—when Ardian the dwarf came up to the line, and cried out, Help! help, Sir Amadis, your brothers are slain! They hastened out to him, and asked how it was.—Sir, they attempted the forbidden chamber, and did not atchieve it, and there they lie for dead! Immediately they rode towards them, and found them so handled as you have heard, albeit some little recovering. Then Agrayes, who was stout of heart, alighted, and went on as fast as he could to the forbidden chamber, striking aright and aleft, with his sword, but his strength did not suffice to bear the blows, he fell senseless between the perrons, and was cast out as his cousins had been. Then Amadis began to curse their journey thither, and said to Galaor, who was now revived, Brother, I must not excuse my body from the danger which yours have undergone. Galaor would have withheld him, but he took his arms, and went on, praying God to help him. When he came to the line of the spell, there he paused for a moment, and said, O Oriana, my lady, from you proceeds all my strength and courage! remember me now at this time, when your dear remembrance is so needful to me! Then he went on. The blows fell thick upon him and hard till he reached the marble perron, but then they came so fast as if all the knights in the world were besetting him, and such an uproar of voices arose as if the whole world were perishing, and he heard it said, If this knight should fail, there is not one in the world who can enter. But he ceased not to proceed, winning his way hardly, sometimes

beaten down upon his hands, sometimes falling upon his knees ; his sword fell from the hand, and, though it hung by a thong from the wrist, he could not recover it, yet holding on still he reached the door of the chamber, and a hand came forth and took him by the hand to draw him in, and he heard a voice which said, Welcome is the knight who shall be lord here, because he passeth in prowess him who made the enchantment, and who had no peer in his time. The hand that led him was large, and hard, like the hand of an old man, and the arm was sleeved with green satin. As soon as he was within the chamber it let go his hold, and was seen no more, and Amadis remained fresh, and with all his strength recovered ; he took the shield from his neck and the helmet from his head, and sheathed his sword, and gave thanks to his lady Oriana for this honour, which for her sake he had won. At this time they of the castle who had heard the voices resign the lordship, and seen Amadis enter, began to cry out, God be praised, we see accomplished what we have so long desired. When his brethren saw that he had atchieved that wherein they had failed, they were exceedingly joyful, because of the great love they bore him, and desired that they might be carried to the chamber ; and there the governor with all his train went to Amadis, and kissed his hand as their lord. Then saw they the wonders which were in the chamber, the works of art and the treasures, such that they were amazed to see them. Yet all this was nothing to the chamber of Apolidon and Grimanesa, for that was such, that not only could no one make the like, but no one could even imagine how it could be made ; it was so devised, that they who were within could clearly see what was doing without, but from without

nothing could be seen within. There they remained some time with great pleasure ; the knights, because one of their lineage was found to exceed in worth all living men, and all who for a hundred years had lived : the islanders, because they trusted to be well ruled and made happy under such a lord, and even to master other lands. Sir, quoth Ysanjo, it is time to take food and rest for to-day : to-morrow, the good men of the land will come and do homage to you. So that day they feasted in the palace, and the following day all the people assembled and did homage to Amadis as their lord, with great solemnities and feasting and rejoicing.*

You have heard in the first part of this great history, how Oriana was moved to great anger and rage by what the Dwarf had said to her concerning the broken sword, so that neither the wise counsels of Mabilia nor of the Damsel of Denmark aught availed her. From that time she gave way to her wrath, so that wholly changing her accustomed manner of life, which was to be altogether in their company, she now forsook them, and for the most part chose to be alone, devising how she might revenge herself for what she suffered, upon him who had caused her sufferings. So recollecting that she could by writing make him sensible of her displeasure, even at a distance, being alone in her chamber, she took ink and parchment from her coffer, and wrote thus :

My frantic grief, accompanied by so great a reason, causes my weak hand to declare what my sad heart cannot conceal against you, the false and disloyal knight, Amadis of Gaul ; for the disloyalty and faith-


*The Spanish writer moralizes here a little upon the mutability of fortune.

lessness are known which you have committed against me, the most ill-fortuned and unhappy of all in the world, since you have changed your affection for me, who loved you above all things, and have placed your love upon one who by her years cannot have discretion to know and love you. Since then I have no other vengeance in my power, I withdraw all that exceeding and misplaced love which I bore towards you ; for great error would it be to love him who has forsaken me, when in requital for my sighs and passion I am deceived and deserted. Therefore, as the wrong is manifest, never appear before me ! for be sure the great love I felt is turned into raging anger. Go, and deceive some other poor woman as you deceived me with your treacherous words, for which no excuse will be received, while I lament with tears my own wretchedness, and so put an end to my life and unhappiness.

Having thus written, she sealed the letter with the seal of Amadis, and wrote on the superscription, I am the damsel wounded through the heart with a sword, and you are he who wounded me. !She then secretly called a squire, who was named Durin, and was brother to the Damsel of Denmark, and bade him not rest till he had reached the kingdom of Sobradisa, where he would find Amadis ; and she bade him mark the countenance of Amadis while he was reading the letter, and stay with him that day, but receive no answer from him, if he wished to give one.

CHAP. III.—How Durin went with the letter of Oriana to Amadis, and how when Amadis had seen the letter he abandoned everything in despair, and went to hide himself in the forest.

DURIN, in obedience to the command of Oriana, presently departed, and hasted so well that on the tenth day he arrived at Sobradisa, where he found the new Queen Briolania, whom he thought the fairest woman, except Oriana, that ever he had seen ; and learning from her that Amadis had departed two days before, he followed him, and reached the Firm Island just as Amadis was passing under the Arch of True Lovers, and so he beheld how the image did more for him than ever it had done for any other. And though he saw Amadis after he came forth to his brethren, yet he did not speak with him, nor give him the letter, till after he had entered the Forbidden Chamber, and been received by all as lord of the island. This he did by Gandalin's advice, who, knowing the letter to be from Oriana, feared that it might cause his master either to forswear or fail in the achieving of so great an enterprise, for he would not only have left off the conquest of the Firm Island, but also of the whole world, to fulfil what she had commanded ; but, when everything was finished, Durin went before him, and Amadis took him apart from his brethren and from all others into a garden, and asked him if he came from the court of King Lisuarte, and what tidings. Sir, said he, the court is as when you left it : I come from thence by the command of my Lady Oriana ; by this letter you will know the cause of my coming. Amadis took the letter, and he concealed the joy that was in his heart, that Durin might know nothing of




his secret ; but his grief he could not conceal when he had read those strong and bitter words, for neither his courage nor reason could support him then, for he seemed struck with death. When Durin saw him so disordered, he cursed himself and his ill fortune, and death, that had not overtaken him on the way. Amadis, for he could not stand, sate down upon the grass, and took the letter which had fallen from his hands, and, when he saw the superscription, again his grief became so violent that Durin would have called his brethren, but feared to do so, observing what secrecy Amadis had chosen. Presently Amadis exclaimed, O Lord, wherefore does it please thee that I should perish, not having deserved it ! and then again, Ah, truth, an ill guerdon dost thou give him who never failed thee ! Then he took the letter again, saying, You are the cause of my unhappy end ; come here that it may be sooner ! and he placed it in his bosom. He asked Durin if he had aught else to say ; and hearing that he had not, replied, Well then, thou shalt take my answer. Sir, quoth he, I am forbidden to receive any.—Did neither Mabilia nor thy sister bid thee say anything ?—They knew not my coming : my lady commanded me to conceal it from them. Holy Mary help me ! I see now my wretchedness is without remedy. He then went to a stream that proceeded from a fountain, and washed his face and eyes, and bade Durin call Gandalin, and bid him bring Ysanjo, the governor ; and he said to the governor, Promise me, as you are a loyal knight, to keep secret all that you shall see till after my brothers have heard mass to-morrow ; and the same promise he exacted from the two squires. Then he commanded Ysanjo to open privately the gate of the castle, and Gandalin to take

his horse and arms out, privately also. This done they left him, and he remained alone, thinking upon a dream which he had dreamt the last night, wherein it seemed, that being armed and on horseback he was on a hill covered with trees, and many persons round about him making great joy ; when a man from amongst them presented him a box, saying, Sir, taste what I bring you ; which he did, and it was exceeding bitter ; and therewith feeling himself cast down and disconsolate, he loosed the reins of his horse, and let him go whither he would ; and he thought that the mirth of all around him was changed into such sorrow as was pitiful to behold ; but his horse carried him far away from them, and took him through the trees to a rocky place surrounded with water ; and then it seemed in his dream that he left his horse and arms, as if by that he would have had rest, and there came to him an old man in a religious habit, and took him by the hand as if he had compassion, and spoke to him in a language which he did not understand, whereupon he awoke. Upon this dream Amadis now mused, thinking that he now found it true.

Then hiding his face from his brethren, that they might not see his trouble, he went to the castle-gate, which the sons of Ysanjo had opened. Come you with me, said Amadis to the governor, and let your sons remain here, and keep this matter secret. So they went to the foot of the rock, where there was a little chapel, and Gandalin and Durin went with them. There he armed himself, and asked the governor to what saint that chapel was dedicated.—To our Lady the Virgin, who hath wrought many miracles here. Hearing this, Amadis went in and knelt down, and said, weeping, Our Lady Virgin Mary, the consoler

and helper of those that are afflicted, I beseech you to intercede with your glorious Son, that he may have mercy on me ; and if it be your will not to help me in my body, have mercy on my soul in these my last days, for other thing than death I do not hope. He then called Ysanjo, and said, promise as a loyal knight to do what I shall direct ! and turning to Gandalin, he took him in his arms and wept abundantly, and held him awhile, for he could not speak. At length he said, my good friend Gandalin, you and I were nursed by the same milk, and our lives have been past together, and never have I endured hardship and danger in which you had not your part also. Your father took me from the sea when I was so little, being only that night's child, and they brought me up as a good father and mother bring up their beloved son ; and you, my true friend, have always thought how to serve me, and I have hoped in God that he would one day enable me to requite thee ; but now this misery, which is worse than death, is come upon me, and we must part, and I have nothing to leave thee, except this island : I therefore command Ysanjo and all others, by the homage which they have done to me, that so soon as they shall know my death they take thee for their lord. The lordship shall be thine, but I enjoin that thy father and mother enjoy it while they live, and afterwards it shall remain to thee. This I do for what they did for my childhood, for my ill fortune will not suffer me to do what they deserve, and what I desire. He then told Ysanjo to take from the rents of the island, which had accumulated, enough to build a monastery by that chapel, in honour of the Virgin Mary, and to endow it for thirty friars. But Gandalin cried out, Sir, you never yet had trouble

wherein I was separated from you, nor shall it be now ; and if you die, I do not wish to live : and I want no honours or lordships ; give it to your brethren, I will not take it, and I do not want it. Hold thy peace, for God's sake, quoth Amadis, and say no such folly to displease me. My brethren are of such worth that they can gain lands for themselves, and to bestow on others. Then he said to Ysanjo, It grieves me, my friend Ysanjo, to leave you before I could honour you according to your deserts ; but I leave you with those who will do it. Ysanjo answered, let me go with you, sir, and suffer what you suffer. Friend, answered Amadis, it must be as I say ; God only can comfort me ! I will be guided by his mercy, and have no other company. He then said to Gandalin, if thou desirest knighthood, take my arms ; for, since thou hast kept them so well, it is right they should be thine. I shall little need them : if not, my brother Galaor shall knight thee. Tell him this Ysanjo, and serve and love him as thou hast me, for I love him above all my lineage, because he is the best, and hath ever been humble towards me. Tell him, too, that I commit Ardian the dwarf to his care. They for great sorrow could make him no answer. Then Amadis embraced them, and commended them to God, saying that he never thought to see them more, and he forbade them to follow him ; and with that spurred his horse and rode away, forgetting to take either shield, or helmet, or spear. He struck into the mountain, going whither his horse would. Thus he kept till midnight, being utterly lost in thought ; the horse came then to a little stream of water, and proceeded upward to find a place so deep that he could drink thereat. The branches struck Amadis in the face,



and so recalled him to himself, and he looked round, and seeing nothing but thickets, rejoiced, thinking that he was hidden in that solitude. So he alighted, and fastened his horse to a tree, and sate upon the green herb by, and wept till his head became giddy, and he fell asleep.

CHAP. IV.—How Gandalin and Durin followed the track of Amadis, carrying his arms which he had left, and how they found him, and how he did battle with a knight and conquered him.



ANDALIN and his companions remained by the chapel, looking after Amadis as he rode so fast away : then Gandalin, who was passionately weeping, cried out, I will follow and carry his arms to him, although he hath forbidden me ! And I, quoth Durin, will bear you company for this night. So they left Ysanjo, and getting to horse, rode after him, coasting here and there about the wood, till fortune brought them so near the place where he was lying, that his horse scented theirs, and began to neigh. Then they knew that he was near, and Gandalin alighted, and went quietly through the shrubs till he saw his master sleeping by the fountain. The squire then took his horse and led it where he had left Durin, and taking off the bridles from all the horses that they might browse the green boughs, they remained still. It was not long before Amadis awoke, for his sleep was restless : he rose, and looked round : the moon was almost down, but it was yet some time till day ; then he lay down again, and broke off pitiful lamentations for his evil fortune.

The two squires heard all he said and were


moved thereat, yet durst they not appear before him. Presently there came up a knight singing along the way, and, when he was near the place where Amadis lay, he exclaimed, Love, love, I thank thee for exalting me above all other knights ! giving me good first, and better afterwards. You made me affect the fair Queen Sardamira, thinking to secure her heart by the honour which I should bear away from this land ; and now, for my greater happiness, you make me love the daughter of the greatest king in the world, the fair Oriana, who hath no peer on earth : you make me love her, and you give me strength to serve her. Saying this, he drew from the way-side to a great tree, whereunder he meant to wait for day-break. Then said Gandalin to his comrade, Stay here while I go see what Amadis will do. He went towards the fountain, but Amadis had risen and was seeking his horse ; and seeing Gandalin dimly in the night, he cried out, Who goes there ? tell me, I beseech thee ?—Gandalin, sir ! who is going to bring you your horse.—Who bade thee follow me against my command ? you have displeased me : give me my horse and go thy way, and tarry not here, unless thou wouldst have me slay thee and myself. Sir, cried Gandalin, for God's sake no more of this ! did you hear the foolish words of a knight hard by ? And this he said to make him angry, that he might forget his displeasure for a while. Amadis answered, I heard him, and therefore want my horse to depart.—How ! is this all you will do ?—What wouldst thou more ?—That you should fight with him, and make him know his folly.—Fool that thou art ! I have neither heart, nor strength, nor spirit ! having lost all in losing her from whom all came : she gave me courage, and hath taken it away :

the most caitiff knight in Great Britain might slay me now. Sir, said Gandalin, for God's sake speak lower, that Durin may not hear this, for he has heard all that the knight said.—What! is Durin here?—We came together: I think he tarries to see what you will do, that he may report it to her who sent him. I am vexed at what you tell me, quoth Amadis; but his spirit arose, knowing that Durin was there, and he said, Give me my horse then, and guide me to the knight. He mounted and took his arms, and Gandalin led him where the knight sate under a tree, holding his horse by the bridle. You sir knight, quoth Amadis, who are enjoying yourself, rise, and let us see if you can maintain the love of which you boast. The knight arose, and cried, Who are you who question me? you shall see how I maintain it, if you dare do battle with me, for I will strike terror into thee, and all who are scorned by love. I am one of those, quoth Amadis: love hath foully requited me: I tell thee this, sir lover, where I have found one truth in him, I have found seven lies. Come, and maintain his justice: let us see if he has gained more in you than he has lost in me! and, as he spake these words, his anger kindled, feeling how unjustly his lady had abandoned him. The knight mounted and took his arms, and said, You knight, whom love has justly forsaken, because you were not worthy to serve him, get you gone! I am offended even at the sight of you. And he would have rode away, but Amadis cried out, What, knight! do you defend your love only with words, and ride off like a coward? How! quoth he: I was leaving thee for contempt, and thou callest it fear! thou art very desirous of thy own hurt: defend thyself now if thou canst! They re

against each other, and both shields were pierced, but the knight was thrown down : he kept the reins, and mounted again lightly. Quoth Amadis, If you do not defend love better with the sword than with the lance, you will be a bad champion. The knight made no reply, but struck at him in great fury : the sword fell on the rim of the shield, and entered in aslant, and he could not pluck it out. Amadis stood in his stirrups, and gave him a blow on his head, and cut away the trappings of his helmet and the skin of his head, and the sword held on and came upon the neck of the horse, so that he fell dead, and the rider senseless. Amadis waited a minute, thinking that he had slain him ; then seeing him recover, he said, Knight, what love has gained in you, and you in him, you may both enjoy : I leave you. So departing from him, he called Gandalin, and seeing Durin there, he said to him, Friend Durin, my sorrow hath no equal, and my grief and recollections are intolerable : it is better that I should die : pray God it may be soon ! Go, with good fortune ! Salute for me, Mabilia, my good cousin, and the damsel of Denmark, thy sister ; and tell them, if they grieve for me, that I perish more undeservedly than ever knight perished ; and tell them that I sorely regret that those who have loved me so much, and done so much for me, have never had their guerdon ? Durin stood weeping before him, and could make no reply. Amadis embraced him, and he commended him to God, and kissed the skirts of his armour and departed. By this it was day-break : Amadis said to Gandalin, if you chuse to go with me, attempt not to disturb me in whatever I say or do : if you will not obey this, go back. He promised obedience. Then Amadis gave him his

arms, and bade him pluck the sword from the shield and give it the knight, and so they rode on.

CHAP. V.—Showing who the knight was whom Amadis conquered, and what had befallen him before he was conquered.

 HIS wounded knight was Patin, brother to Don Sidon, who was then emperor of Rome ; he was the best knight in all those lands, and therefore greatly feared throughout the empire. The emperor was very old, and had no son, therefore all thought his brother should succeed him. He loved Sardamira, queen of Sardinia, who was a fair and comely damsel, and being niece to the empress had been brought up in the court ; and he had so far profited by his service, that she had promised him, if ever she married, to marry him. El Patin* upon this grew more presumptuous, though his natural arrogance was enough ; and he said to her, I have heard that King Lisuarte hath a daughter who is renowned over all the world for her beauty. I will go to his court, and say she is not so fair as you, and this I will maintain against the two best knights who dare undertake her cause. They say there are knights there of great worth in arms, but if I do not conquer them in one day, I will that King Lisuarte do cause my head to be cut off ! The queen answered him, Do not do this ; for, if that princess be fair, it impaireth not the beauty which God hath bestowed upon me, if beauty

* The article is uniformly prefixed to his name, except where he is first mentioned. In our language it is only used where the name is a family or clan appellation : The Plantagenet, the Douglas, the Graham.

there be ; and, methinks, you might with more reason and less pride prove your prowess in some other cause, for this enterprize is not becoming a man of so high a rank, and moreover it is unreasonable and arrogant, and you cannot expect it to come to a good end. Come what will, quoth he, I will do it, to prove that you, who are the fairest lady in the world, have the best knight for your servant. So he took his leave, and with rich arms and ten squires passed over into great Britain, and went directly to where King Lisuarte was, who seeing him so accompanied thought him to be some great personage, and courteously welcomed him. When he was disarmed, all that saw his great stature judged him to be of great courage. Lisuarte then asked him who he was. He answered, King, I will tell you, for I do not come to your house to conceal myself, but to make myself known. Know, then, that I am El Patin, brother to the emperor of Rome, and so soon as I see the queen, and your daughter Oriana, you shall know the cause of my coming. When the king heard that he was a man of so high rank, he embraced him and said, Good friend, much are we pleased with your coming, and you shall see the queen and her daughter and all others of my house, when it pleaseth you. Then he placed him at his own table, and they were feasted in a manner befitting the table of such a personage. El Patin looked round him, and when he saw so many knights he was astonished, and began to hold the household of his brother, the emperor, as nothing. Don Grumedan took him to his lodging, by the king's command, and did him much honour. The next day after mass, the king took with him El Patin and Don Grumedan, and went to the queen, who received him

honourably, and made him sit before her and near her daughter. Now Oriana's beauty was much impaired by reason of her great trouble of mind, yet when El Patin saw her he marvelled greatly, and thought that they who praised her had not mentioned half her beauty, and his heart was entirely changed from the purpose with which he had come, and wholly bent to obtain her. Wherefore calling to mind his own high birth and great qualities, and moreover that he should one day possess the empire, he thought that if he demanded her in marriage she would not be refused him. So taking the king and queen apart, he said, I come hither to request the marriage of your daughter, for your worth and for her beauty: if I sought others of her rank, I could obtain them, seeing what I am, and what I expect to be. The king answered, We thank you much for what you say, but the queen and I have promised our daughter not to give her in marriage against her consent: we must talk with her before we can answer you. This the king said that he might not offend him, but in his mind he was resolved not to give her to him, or to any other who would carry her out of the land which she was to inherit. El Patin was satisfied with this, and waited five days, expecting a favourable answer; but the king and queen, thinking it folly, had said nothing to Oriana. Then El Patin asked the king how the business went on. He answered, I do what I can, but it is necessary that you should speak to my daughter, and request her to obey my commands. El Patin went to the princess, and said, Lady Oriana, I wish to ask a thing of you which will be much to your honour and profit. What thing is that? quoth she.—That you will do the will of your father. She knowing not

for what reason he spake, replied, That shall I right willingly, being sure it will be as you say. Then Patin was full joyful, thinking he had won her, and said, I will go through this land, seeking adventures ; before long you will hear such things of me, as will make you with more reason grant what I require. And this also he said to the king, telling him that he would see the wonders of his land. The king replied, You have it in you to do this ; yet would I dissuade you, for in this land you will find many great and perilous adventures, and many strong and hardy knights, practised in arms. I like this, quoth El Patin : if they are strong and hardy, I am neither weak nor faint, as my deeds shall show. So he departed, right joyful at Oriana's answer, and for this joy he was singing as you have heard, when his ill fortune led him where Amadis was making moan ; and this is the reason why that knight came from so far a land.

Durin departed from Amadis when it was clear daylight, and he passed by El Patin, who had taken off the piece of his helmet that was left, and had his face and neck all bloody. He seeing Durin, said to him, Good child, so may God make you a good man as you tell me if there be any place near where I may have remedy for my wound. Yes, quoth he, but all there are so afflicted that they will hardly attend to you.—For what cause ?—For the loss of a good knight, who hath won that lordship, and seen the likenesses and secrets of Apolidon, which none other could ever do, and he is departed in such sorrow that nothing but his death is looked for.—Methinks you speak of the Firm Island ?—I do.—What ! hath it found a master ? certes I am heartily sorry, for I was going there myself to prove the adventure and win the island.


Durin laughed, and answered, Truly, sir knight, if there be no more prowess in you than you have just now manifested, you would have gained little honour! El Patin raised himself as well as he could, and tried to catch his bridle, but Durin turned aside. Tell me, said he, what knight is he that hath won the Firm Island!—Tell me first who you are?—I am El Patin, brother to the Emperor of Rome.—God-a-mercy! quoth Durin, your birth is better than your prowess or your courtesy. Know that the knight you ask about is the same who hath just now left you: by what you have seen you may judge that he is worthy of what he hath won. So he went his way, and took the straight road to London, greatly desirous to tell Oriana all that he had seen of Amadis.

CHAP. VI.—How Don Galaor and Florestan and Agraves went in quest of Amadis, and how Amadis forsaking his arms and changing his name betook himself to a solitary life with a good man in a hermitage.



SANJO, according to his promise, revealed nothing concerning Amadis till after mass the next day. Then, when his brethren and his cousin enquired for him, he said, Arm yourselves, and I will tell you his commands. And, when they were armed, Ysanjo began to weep passionately, and exclaimed, O sirs, what a grief and a misery is come upon us, that we should lose our lord so soon! Then he told them all that Amadis had said, and how he besought that they would not seek him, for they could not help his ill, and that they should not grieve for his death. Holy Mary! cried they, the knight in the world is about to perish! but w

seek him, and, if we cannot with our lives help him, we will bear him company with our deaths. Ysanjo then told Galaor his brother's request that he would make Gandalin a knight, and take the dwarf into his service: this he delivered weeping, and they weeping also heard it. The dwarf for pure grief was beating his head against a wall; but Galaor caught him up and said, Ardian come with me, since thy master has so commanded, and my lot shall be yours. The dwarf answered, Sir, I will follow you, but not as my master, till we know some certain tidings of Amadis. Forthwith they went to horse, and all three hastened along the road which Ysanjo pointed. All day they rode on, meeting no one of whom they could ask tidings, till they came where El Patin lay wounded beside his dead horse: his squires had found him, and were cutting down boughs and poles to make him a litter, for he was exceeding faint with loss of blood, so that he could not answer them, but made sign that they should speak to his squires, and they replied, that their lord had sped so ill in an encounter with the knight who had won the Firm Island. Good squires, know you which way he went?—No; but before we came up to this place we met an armed knight in the forest, upon a stout horse, and he was weeping and accusing his fortune: a squire behind him carried his arms; the shield had two lions azure in a field or, and the squire was lamenting also. That is he! cried they; and they pushed on with great speed till they came out of the forest upon a great plain, where there were many roads in every direction, so that they knew not which way to take; therefore they agreed to separate, and meet at the court of Lisuarte upon St. John's day, that if by then they



had been unsuccessful in their search, they might consult anew how to find him. There then they embraced and separated, each earnestly bent on his quest, but in vain : for, when Amadis reached the open country, he took none of those roads, but struck aside along a glen, and thence made into the mountain.

He rode on lost in thought, suffering his horse to chuse the path. About noon the horse came to some trees that grew beside a mountain-stream, and then stopt, being weary with the heat and with the toil of last night. Here Amadis recollected himself and looked round, and was pleased to see no signs of a habitation : he alighted and drank of the brook. Gandalin came up, and turning the horses to feed came to his master, whom he found more dead than alive ; and not daring to disturb him, he lay down before him. Amadis continued in this mood till sunset, then rising, he struck his foot against Gandalin : Art thou sleeping ? quoth he. No, replied Gandalin, but I am thinking upon two things which concern you, the which, if it please you to hear, I will speak : if not, I will be silent. Amadis answered, Go saddle the horses, and let us begone : I do not chuse to be found by those who seek me. Sir, said Gandalin, you are in a solitary place, and your horse is so weary that, unless you allow him some rest, he cannot carry you. Amadis replied, weeping, Do what you think best : whether I stay or go, there is no rest for me ! Then Gandalin looked after the horses, and returned to his master, and begged him to eat of a pasty which he had brought, but he would not. Sir, said he, shall I say the two things whereon I have been thinking ? Say what you will, quoth Amadis ; I care nothing

now for any thing that may be said or done, and wish to live no longer than till I can confess.—Then I pray you hear me, sir: I have thought much upon that letter which Oriana sent you, and upon the words of the knight with whom you fought; and seeing how light is the faith of many women, it may be that she hath changed her affections, and so has feigned anger against you, before you discover it. The other thing is, that I believe her to be so good and loyal that she could not have been thus moved, unless some great falsehood had been spoken of you, which she believes and feels in her heart; and, since you know that you have never been false, you should make the truth known, whereby she will repent of what she hath done, and intreat your forgiveness for the wrong, and you will enjoy your former happiness. It is better to take food with this hope, than by abandoning yourself to despair, to die and lose her, and the glory of this world, and even the other. Hold thy peace, for God's sake! quoth Amadis, for such foolishness and lies as thou hast uttered, are enough to provoke the whole world. Oriana, my lady, has never done wrong; and, if I perish, it is but reasonable, not for my deserving, but to accomplish her will and command: if I did not know that thou hast said this to comfort me, I would cut off thy head! you have greatly displeased me: never say the like to me again! He then turned away in anger, and walked along the side of the stream.

But Gandalin, who for two days and a night had not slept, was overcome with heaviness, and at length fell asleep. When Amadis saw this, he saddled his horse, and hid Gandalin's saddle and bridle among the bushes, that he might not be able to find them;

and, taking his arms, he struck into the wildest part of the mountain. All night he went, and the next day till vespers, then he came to a plain at the foot of a mountain : there were two high trees there that grew over a fountain, and there he went to give his horse drink, for they had found no water all that day. When he came up to the fountain, he saw an old man in a religious habit, who was giving his ass water ; his beard and hair were grey, and his habit was very poor, being made of goat's hair. Amadis saluted him, and asked him if he was a priest. The good man answered that he had been one forty years. God be praised ! quoth Amadis : I beseech you for the love of God stay here to-night and hear my confession, of which I am in great need. In God's name ! said the old man. Then Amadis alighted, laid his arms upon the ground, and took the saddle from his horse and let him feed ; and he disarmed, and knelt before the good man, and began to kiss his feet. The good man took him by the hand and raised him, and made him sit by him ; and, beholding him well, he thought him the goodliest knight that ever he saw, but he was pale and his face and neck were stained with tears, so that the old man had great pity, and said, Sir knight, it seems that you are in great affliction : if it be for any sin that you have committed, and these tears spring from repentance, in a happy hour came you here ! but if it be for any worldly concerns, from which by your youth and comeliness it seems you cannot be removed, remember God, and beseech him of his mercy to bring you to his service. He then raised his hand and blessed him, and bade him relate all the sins he could call to mind. Hereon Amadis began the whole discourse of his life, without letting anything

pass. The good man then said, seeing that you are of such understanding, and of so high a lineage, you ought not to despair and cast yourself away for anything that may befall you, much less for the action of a woman, for they are as easily won as lightly lost. I counsel you to lay aside such folly, for the love of God, to whom it is displeasing, and even for worldly reason, for man ought not to love where he is not beloved. Good sir, replied Amadis, I am now in such extremity that I cannot live any long time : I beseech you, by that God whose faith you hold, take me with you for the little while I have to live, that I may have comfort for my soul. My horse and arms I need no longer : I will leave them here, and go with you on foot, and perform whatever penitence you enjoin. If you refuse, you will sin before God, for else I shall wander and perish in this mountain. When the good man saw him thus resolute, he said to him, with a heart wholly bent to his good, Certes, sir, it becomes not a knight like you to abandon himself as if he had lost the whole world, by reason of a woman : their love is no longer than while they see you with their eyes, and hear such words as you say to them, and that past, presently they forget you ; especially in those false loves that are begun against the Lord : the same sin which makes them sweet at first, gives them a bitterness in the end, as you experience. But you, who are of such prowess, and have such power, you who are the true and loyal protector of such as are oppressed, great wrong would it be to the world if you thus forsake it. I know not what she is who hath brought you to this extremity, but if all the worth and beauty of the sex were brought together in one, I know that such a man as you ought not to be

lost for her. Good sir, quoth Amadis, I ask not your counsel upon this, where it is not wanted ; but, for my soul's sake, I pray you take me in your company, for else I shall have no remedy, but to die in this mountain. The old man hearing this, had such compassion on him that the tears fell down his long white beard. Sir, my son, said he, I live in a dreary place, and a hard life ; my hermitage is full seven leagues out at sea, upon a high rock, to which no ship can come except in summer time. I have lived there these thirty years, and he who lives there must renounce all the pleasures and delights of the world, and all my support is the alms which the people of the land here bestow upon me. I promise you, said Amadis, this is the life I desire for the little while I shall live, and I beseech you, for the love of God, let me go with you. The good man, albeit against his will, consented ; and Amadis said, Now, father, command me what to do, and I will be obedient. The good man gave him his blessing, and said vespers, and then taking bread and fish from his wallet, he bade Amadis eat ; but Amadis refused, though he had been three days without tasting food. You are to obey me, said the good man, and I command you to eat, else your soul will be in great danger if you die. Then he took a little food ; and when it was time to sleep, the old man spread his cloak and laid him down thereon, and Amadis laid himself down at his feet.

The most part of the night Amadis did nothing but turn from side to side, but at last being sore wearied he fell asleep, and in that sleep he dreamt that he was fastened in a dark chamber, where there was no light at all, neither could he find any way to come out thereof, whereat he greatly lamented ; then he thought

that his cousin Mabilia and the Damsel of Denmark came to him, and there was a sun-beam before them which dispelled the darkness, and they took him by the hand, saying, Come forth, sir, to this great palace. And he thought that he was right joyful ; and going out he saw his lady Oriana surrounded with a great flame of fire, whereat he cried out, Holy Mary, help her ! and ran through the fire to save her, feeling no hurt, and took her in his arms and carried her into a garden, the greenest and pleasantest that ever he had seen. At the loud cry which he made the good man awoke, and took him by the hand, asking him what he ailed ? Sir, said he, I felt such pain in my sleep that I was almost dead. So it seemed by your cry, said the old man, but it is time to set out ; then he got upon his ass. Amadis would have walked by him, but the good man with great entreaty made him mount his horse, and so they fared on together.

As they went, Amadis besought him to grant one boon, which should be no-ways hurtful, the which the old man granted. I pray you then, said Amadis, that so long as we are together you will not tell any man who I am, nor anything concerning me, and that you will call me by some other name, not my own ; and when I am dead you tell my brethren of me, that they may take my body into their country. Your life and death, said the good man, are in the hands of God, so talk no more of this, he will help you if you know and love and serve him as you ought ; but tell me, by what name will you be called ?—Even by whatever it shall please you.—So the old man, seeing how fair he was, and in how forlorn a condition, replied, I will give you a name conformable to your appearance and distress, Beltenebros. Now Beltene-

bros being intrepred, signifyeth, the fair forlorn. The name pleased Amadis, and he admired the good sense of the old man in chusing it ; so by this name he was long known till it became as renowned as that of Amadis. Thus communing they reached the sea-side just as the night closed in ; there they found a bark, wherein the good man might cross to his hermitage. Beltenebros gave his horse to the mariners, and they gave him in exchange a cloak of goat skin, and a garment of coarse grey woollen. They embarked, and Beltenebros asked the good man what was his own name, and the name of his abode. They call my dwelling-place, said he, the Poor Rock, because none can live there without enduring great poverty : my own name is Andalod. I was a clerk of some learning, and spent my youth in many vanities, till it pleased God to awaken me, and then I withdrew to this solitary abode : for thirty years I have never left it, till now that I went to the burial of my sister. At length they reached the rock and landed, and the mariners returned to the mainland. Thus Amadis, now called Beltenebros, remained on the Poor Rock, partaking the austerities of the hermit, not for devotion, but for despair, forgetful of his great renown in arms, and hoping and expecting death,—all for the anger of a woman !

When Gandalin awoke in the mountain, he looked round him, and seeing only his own horse, started up, misdoubting what had happened ; he called aloud, and searched among the shrubs in vain, he could find neither Amadis nor his horse. Then, knowing Amadis was departed, he turned to his horse to ride after him, but the saddle and bridle were gone ! upon that he cursed himself and his evil fortune, and the day

wherein he was born, going from one place to another, till at length he espied the harness, and immediately set out on pursuit. Five days he rode on, sleeping in desert places, enquiring at every habitation for his master. On the sixth, chance led him to the fountain where Amadis had left his armour. Here he beheld a tent in which were two damsels: he alighted, and asked them if they had seen a knight who bore two lions azure in a golden field. They answered that they had not seen him, but such a shield and the whole harness of a knight, they had found beside that fountain. When Gandalin heard this, he tore his hair, and exclaimed, Holy Mary, help me! my master, the best knight in the world, is dead or lost! how badly have I served you, my lord! and now with reason ought I to be hated by all men, and the earth ought not to suffer me upon her, since I have left you at such a time! You were he who succoured all, and now all have forsaken you! the world and all in it have abandoned you! and I, caitiff wretch, and more wretched than all that ever were born, have left you in your death! And with that, for excess of passion, he fell down. The damsels shrieked out, Holy Mary, help! the squire is dead! and they ran to him, and flung water in his face, but it was long before they could recal him to his senses. Good Squire, they cried, be not desperate for a thing which is not certain: you had better seek him till you learn whether he be alive or dead: good men ought to bear up against sorrow, not to die in despair. Gandalin took heart at their words, and resolved to seek his master as long as he lived. Ladies, said he, where did you see these arms?—We will tell you willingly: we were in the company of Don Guilan the Pensive, who delivered

us and twenty other knights and damsels from the prison of Gandinos the ruffian, behaving himself there so valiantly that he hath destroyed the wicked customs of the castle, and constrained the lord thereof to swear never more to maintain the same. We came with Guilan to this fountain four days ago, and when he saw the shield for which you enquired, he was very sorrowful, and alighting, said, The shield of the best knight in the world should not lie thus! and with that, weeping sorely, he hung the shield upon this tree and bade us keep it while he rode to seek him whose it was. We set up our tents here, and Guilan sought for him three days without success: yesterday he returned, and this morning, giving his own arms to his squires, he girded on the sword and took the shield, saying, By God, shield thou makest a bad exchange, in losing thy master to go with me! He told us, he would carry the arms to Queen Brisena. We also, and all who were delivered by him, are going to that court, to beg the queen of her goodness to recompense Don Guilan, as the knights will beseech the king. Then God be with you! quoth Gandalin. I shall take your advice: and, as most caitiff and unhappy wretch in the world, go seek for him upon whom my life or death depends.

CHAP. VII.—How Durin returned to his lady after having delivered her bidding to Amadis, and of the grief she made for the news.



N the tenth day after he had left Amadis in the forest, Durin reached London, and, alighting at his own lodging, went straight to the queen's palace. So soon as Oriana saw him,

her heart throbbed violently, so that she could not calm it, and she went into her chamber and lay down upon the bed, bidding the Damsel of Denmark go for her brother, and bring him to her secretly. The damsel returned with Durin, and leaving him with her mistress, went out to Mabilia. Now, friend, said Oriana, tell me where you have been, and where you found Amadis, and what he did when he read my letter, and if you have seen Queen Briolania: tell me every thing. Then Durin related how he had followed Amadis from Sobradisa to the Firm Island, and arrived there just as Amadis was passing under the arch of true lovers, under the which none might pass that had been false to his first love. How, cried she, dared he prove that adventure, knowing that he could not accomplish it? It did not turn out so, replied the squire; he accomplished it with more loyalty than any other had ever there displayed, and was received with more honour, and such signs as had never been seen before. When Oriana heard this, her joy was very great, that that which had occasioned her great anger was thus disproved. He proceeded with his tale, how Amadis had won the forbidden chamber. Hold! quoth she, and she lifted up her hands and began to pray God that she might one day be in that chamber with him who had worthily won it. Now, quoth she, tell me what did Amadis when you gave him the letter? The tears came into Durin's eyes. Lady, I advise you not to ask, for you have done the worst cruelty and devilry that ever damsel committed. Holy Mary! cried Oriana, what art thou saying? I say, repeated Durin, that you have unjustly destroyed the best and truest knight that ever woman had, or will have to the end of the world. Cursed be the hour in

which such a thing was devised, and cursed be death that did not take me before I carried such a message : if I had known what I carried, I would rather have slain myself than have appeared before him, for you in sending that letter, and I in taking it, have been the cause of his death. Then he related every thing that had passed, and all that Amadis had said, and how he was gone into the mountain to die. While he was relating these things, all Oriana's anger was gone, and her shame and anguish became so intolerable, that when he had ceased she could not utter a word, but remained like one who had lost her senses. Durin, albeit that he thought she well deserved this suffering, was yet moved to pity, and he went to Mabilia and his sister, and said to them, Go and help Oriana, for, if she hath done wrong, her punishment is come upon her : and he went his way.

They ran to her, and seeing in what state she was, they fastened the door of her chamber, and threw water in her face, and brought her to herself, and she then began to lament what she had done, and cry out for death. But those true friends sent again for Durin, and learnt from him all that had past, and then began to comfort her, and they made her write a letter to request his forgiveness, and bid him come with all speed to the castle of Miraflores, there to receive her atonement. This letter the Damsel of Denmark would take and search for him, for she refused no trouble or difficulty for the two persons in the world whom she loved best ; and, because Amadis in his sorrow had talked so much of Gandales, they thought he might be with him ; and they agreed, as a pretext for her going there, that she should carry gifts to the queen of Scotland, and tidings of her daughter Mabilia.

Oriana therefore told her mother they were about to send the damsel, and Brisena approving thereof, sent also presents from herself. This being settled, the damsel, in company with her brother Durin, and Enil, a nephew of Gandales, rode to a port called Vegil, which is in that part of Great Britain towards Scotland, and embarking there, in seven days they came to the town called Poligez, in Scotland. From thence they proceeded to the castle of Gandales; him they met going to the chace, and saluted him; and he, perceiving that the damsel was of a foreign land by her speech, asked her from whence she came. I am the messenger, quoth she, of some damsels whom you love much, and who have sent gifts to the queen of Scotland.—Good damsel, and who are they?—Oriana, daughter of King Lisuarte, and Mabilia, whom you know. Then Gandales joyfully bade them welcome, and took them to his castle. As they were conversing, the old knight enquired for his foster son, Amadis. At this the damsel was grieved, perceiving that he was not there as they had hoped; but, not to distress Gandales by the truth, she only answered that he was not yet returned from Sobradisa. We thought, said she, that he would first accompany his cousin Agrayes here, to see you and the queen his aunt; and I bring letters to him from Queen Brisena and his other friends, which he would be right glad to receive. This she said, that if Amadis were there in secret, he might be induced to see her. She remained with Gandales two days, then proceeded to the queen.

CHAP. VIII.—How Guilan the Pensive took the shield and armour of Amadis, which he found by the fountain, and carried them to the court of King Lisuarte.

DON GUILAN the Pensive proceeded with the arms toward the court of Lisuarte. He always carried the shield of Amadis round his neck, except when he was constrained to fight, and then he took his own. So as he rode, two nephews of Arcalaus met him and knew the shield, and attempted to force it from him, saying they would take that shield, or the head of him who carried it, to their uncle. When Guilan knew of how bad a race they were, he cared the less for them, and gave them both battle. They were strong knights, and both younger men than he; he, nevertheless, was a valiant man and tried in arms, so that he slew one, and drove the other to flight. That evening he took up his lodging in the house of a knight whom he knew, who welcomed him gladly, and gave him another lance, for his own was broken in the encounter. He continued his way till he came to a river called Guinon, which was a great water, and over it was a wooden-bridge, just so broad that one horseman might come and another go. At one end of the bridge was a knight who wished to pass; he bore a shield vert, with a bend argent, whereby Guilan knew him to be his cousin Ladasin. On the other side was a knight who kept the passage; he rode a large bay horse, and did bear in his shield argent a lion sable: This knight called out aloud to Ladasin, You must joust, knight, if you would pass. Your joust shall not prevent me, quoth Ladasin. They ran at each other upon the bridge, and Ladasin and his horse fell into the river. There would Ladasin have perished,

by reason of the weight of his arms, and the height whence he had fallen, if by good hap he had not caught the boughs of some willows, by which he got to the bank. Don Guilan ran to his help, and with the aid of his squires got him out of the water. Cousin, said he, you would hardly have been saved without these boughs : All knights should avoid to joust upon these bridges, for they who keep them have their horses practised to the place, and rather by that, than by their own prowess, win the honour. I would rather turn out of the way and go round, if this had not happened to you, but now I must try to revenge you, By this, Ladasin's horse had got upon the opposite bank, and the knight bade his servants lead him to the castle, which was a strong and pleasant fortress, built in the river, and the way to it was by a bridge of stone. The knight was ready at the bridge-end. Don Guilan gave the shield of Amadis to his squire, and took his own, and they met together upon the bridge with a most rude encounter. The knight was unhorsed and fell into the water ; Guilan also was dismounted, and his horse went over, but he saved himself by clinging to the planks. The knight got upon Guilan's horse, and so to shore, while Guilan's squires took the bay courser for their master. Don Guilan presently saw the knight of the bridge shaking off the water, and holding the bridle : Give me my horse, said he, and let me depart. How ! quoth he, think you to escape so lightly with this ?—Quoth Guilan, Have we not performed the custom ? The battle is not yet over, cried the knight, because we both fell : we must decide it with the sword. Perforce must I fight ? cried Guilan : is not the wrong done already enough, for bridges should be free for every passenger ? Will you, nill you,

quoth he of the bridge, you shall feel how my sword can cut. He then sprung upon Guilan's horse, without setting his foot in the stirrup, and placed himself right in the road. Don Cavalier, tell me, said he, before we fight, if thou art of Lisuarte's country or court?—Why ask you?—I wish it pleased God, that I had King Lisuarte here as I have thee, by my head his reign should be finished. Certes, quoth Guilan, you have now given me a good will to fight with thee, which before I had not: I am of his household, and, if it be in me, you shall never more do him disservice. Before noon, quoth the knight, you shall carry my message to him, and I will tell you who I am, and what present I will send him: my name is Gandalod, son to Barsinan, lord of Sansuena, he whom King Lisuarte slew in London. The presents you shall carry him, are the heads of four of his knights, whom I hold prisoners in yonder tower; the one is Giontes his nephew, and thy own right hand, which I mean to cut off and tie round thy neck. Don Guilan laid hand to sword: you have boasting enough, if that were all that were needed.

Then began so fierce a battle, that Ladasin and the squires thought even the conqueror could not escape with life; but they were both hardy knights, and their armour of excellent temper, and they knew how to defend themselves. Now when their fight was at the hottest, they heard the winding of a horn from the top of the tower. Gandalod knew not what it could mean, and Guilan thought it was a signal for succour to his enemy; therefore they both more eagerly bestirred themselves to end the battle. Gandalod grappled with him, and they both fell; then was the fight closer and more dangerous, but Guilan had the advantage; it was evident that his antagonist v

weary and weak, and at length by a well driven blow, Don Guilan lopt off his right arm. He shrieked out, and turned to fly to his tower, but Guilan reached him, plucked the helmet from his head, and bade him chuse instant death, or to present himself with his presents, but in another guise, to King Lisuarte. I will rather trust his mercy, quoth Gandalod, than be slain here outright.

Don Guilan then took horse, and rode with Ladasin towards the tower, where there was a great uproar. The knights had broken from their prison and seized arms, and one of them it was who wound the horn, and now they had won the castle; the gate was opened, and the servants and one knight came flying out : they called out to Ladasin and Guilan to kill those villains, and particularly the knight : three of the men escaped them, but the knight they took. Then said Guilan to them, sirs, I cannot tarry, but my cousin Ladasin shall keep you company ; let the castle be kept for me, and do you carry this knight and Gandalod to King Lisuarte for his judgment. Then he gave his own shield, which was much battered, to his squire, and took that of Amadis, and as he hung it round his neck the tears came. They knew the shield, and hearing how Don Guilan had found it, were sorely troubled, thinking that some great mishap had befallen Amadis. So he proceeded to the court, and all that saw the shield crowded round him ; and the king said, For God's sake, Don Guilan, tell us what you know of Amadis. I know nothing of him, sir, quoth he, but how I found the shield I will declare before the queen. So he was taken to the queen, and he knelt before her weeping, and told her how he had found the arms of Amadis, and sought for him three days in vain.

Knowing, said he, the value of that good knight, and that it was his desire to employ it till death in your service, I have brought you these arms, in testimony of the duty which I do owe both to you and to him. Let them be placed where all may see them ; there may be some among the many strangers who come here, who may know some tidings of their master, and they will be memorials to all who follow arms, that they may take example by his great chivalry. Greatly was the queen distressed at this, and Lisuarte also, and all the court ; but Oriana could not remain there, and she went to her bed, and bitterly reproaching her own folly, wished for death. Albeit Mabilia did somewhat cheer her with a hope that the Damsel of Denmark might find him and repair all.

The knight and damsels whom Don Guilan had released, soon arrived, and the two damsels who had seen Gandalin, and they related what lamentation a squire had made over the arms. Presently after came Ladasin, and the knights who led Gandalod prisoner ; and when Lisuarte heard what cruelties he had purposed, he said to him, Here I slew thy father for the great treason which he committed against me, and here thou shalt die for that which thou didst purpose to commit. So he commanded him, and the knight his follower, to be thrown from the tower, before which Barsinan had been burnt.

CHAP. IX.—Relating how, Beltenebros being upon a Poor Rock, Corisanda came there in a ship in search of her lover Florestan, and of what happened, and what she said in the Court of King Lisuarte.

BELTENEBROS and the hermit were one day sitting on the stone-bench by the door of their chapel, when the old man said, I pray you, son, tell me what it was that made you cry out so in your sleep, when we were by the fountain of the plain? That shall I willingly, father, he replied, and I beseech you tell me what you understand by it. Then he related to him the manner of his dream, only the names of the women, those he did not tell. The good man mused for a while, and then said, with a cheerful countenance, Beltenebros, you have given me great pleasure by this account, and you also have great reason to rejoice. The dark chamber, in the which you thought yourself to be, and from whence you could not get out, signifieth this great tribulation which you now endure. The damsels who opened the door, are those friends who continually solicit your cause with her whom you love so much, and they will succeed so well as to withdraw you from this place. The sun-beam which went before them, is the joyful news that they are to send you here; and the fire, wherein you saw your lady enveloped, is the great pain of love which she suffers for you as well as you for her: from that fire you delivered her, that is, from the pain which your presence will remove; and the pleasant garden is a sign of great happiness, where-with you shall pass your lives. Truly, I know a man of my habit should not discourse of such things as these, yet it is more for God's service to speak the

truth that may comfort you, than to conceal it, seeing your desperate state.

Beltenebros knelt down and kissed the old man's hands, thanking God for having given him such a friend in his need, and praying with tears that he would mercifully be pleased to accomplish the words of that holy man his servant. Then he besought him to tell the interpretation of the dream he had dreamt before Durin gave him the letter, which when the hermit had heard, he answered, This I can show you clearly, for it is all accomplished. The place overshadowed with trees, was the Firm Island, and the people who made such great joy about you, signified the great pleasure of the islanders in gaining you for their lord. The man who came to you with the box of bitter electuary, was the messenger of your lady, for the bitterness of her words, you, who have proved them, can best tell : and you laid aside your arms. The stony place amidst the water, is this poor rock ; and the religious man who spoke to you in an unknown tongue, am I, who tell you the holy word of God, which before you neither knew nor thought of.

Verily, said Beltenebros, you tell me the truth of this dream, for these things have all come to pass, and therefore great cause have I to hope for the future. Yet was not this hope so great or so certain as to remove his sorrow, for he would often sit with his eyes fixed upon the ground, remembering what he had been, and his life would have been endangered by exceeding melancholy, had it not been for the counsel of that good man. And sometimes, to take him away from that pensiveness, the hermit would make him go with two nephews that kept him company th

angle in a little stream hard by, where they caught plenty of fish.

Here Beltenebros dwelt in penitence and great grief, and he past the night most frequently under some large trees in the garden near the chapel, that he might there lament, without the knowledge of the hermit or the boys ; and calling to mind the great wrong he endured, he made this song in his passion :

Sith that the victory of right deserved
By wrong they do withhold for which I served ;
Now sith my glory thus hath had a fall,
Glorious it is to end my life withall.
By this my death, likewise my woes release,
My hope, my joy, my inflamed love doth cease.
But ever will I mind my during pain,
For they, to end my glory and my gain,
Myself have murdered, and my glory slain.*

He had passed one night as usual under these trees, when towards morning he heard certain instruments

* This is the version in the English translation from the French : the matter is preserved, the manner lost. The poem is curious from its age ; it is printed with these marks :

Pues seme niega victoria
dojusto mera deuida
alli do muere la gloria (::)
es gloria morir la vida.

Y con esta muerte mia
moriran todas mis daños, (::) (::)
mi esperanza y mi porfia
el amor y sus engaños ;
mas quedara en mi memoria
lastima nunca perdida, (::)
que por me matar la gloria,
me mataron gloria y vida.

touched so sweetly, that he took great delight in hearing them, and marvelled what it might be, knowing that in that place there dwelt none else than the hermit and his nephews. He rose, and went softly towards the sound, and saw that there were two damsels by a fountain, who, tuning their voices to their lutes, did sing a most pleasant song. He stood awhile listening, then advanced, and said, God save you, gentle damsels, but your sweet music has made me lose my matins ! They wondered who he should be, and said to him, Tell us, friend, for courtesy, what place is this where we have landed, and who are you who speak to us ? Ladies, he replied, they call it the Rock of the Hermitage, because of the hermit that dwells here. As for me, I am a poor man who bear him company, doing great and hard penance for the sins that I have committed. Then said they, Friend, is there any house here where our lady could rest for two or three days ? for she is very sick : she is a lady of high rank and wealth, whom love hath greatly tormented. Beltenebros answered, here is a little cabin, it is very small, in which I lodge : if the hermit pleases, you shall have it, and I will asleep abroad in the field, as I often use to do. For this courtesy the damsels heartily thanked him. By this the day began to break, and Beltenebros saw under some trees the lady of whom they spake, lying upon a rich bed ; four armed knights and five serving men, who attended her, were sleeping on the shore, and a well appointed ship rode at anchor. The lady was young and beautiful, so that he took pleasure in beholding her.

Beltenebros then went to the hermit, who was robing himself to say mass. Father, said he, there are strangers here : it will be well to wait mass !

them. So they both went out from the chapel. The knights and serving-men were carrying the sick lady towards them, and her damsels were coming with her, and they asked the hermit if there was any house wherein they could place her. He answered, Here are two cabins: I live in the one, and by my will never woman shall enter that. This poor man, who makes his penitence here, lodges in the other, and I will not remove him against his will. To this Beltenebros replied, Father, you may well give them that, for I will rest under the trees, as I often do. They then entered the chapel to hear mass; but the sight of knights and damsels reminded Beltenebros of what he had been, and of his own lady, and renewed in him his exceeding sorrow, so that he sobbed aloud, and kneeling down at the altar, besought the Virgin Mary to help him in his affliction. The knights and damsels, who saw how he wept, held him for a man of good life, and marvelled how he could employ his youth and beauty in that desert place, for any sin that he could have committed, seeing that the mercy of God may be obtained in all places alike, by such as truly repent. As soon as mass was ended, they carried the lady into his cabin, and laid her in her rich bed, and she lay there weeping and wringing her hands. The damsels went for their lutes to solace her, and Beltenebros asked them wherefore she appeared so distressed. Friend, said they, this lady hath great possessions, and is of high rank and beautiful, though her sorrow doth now diminish her fairness, and we will tell you the cause of her sorrow, tho' it should not be told to others. It is excessive love that afflicts her: she is going to seek him whom she loves at the court of King Lisuarte, and God

grant that she may find him there! When he heard the house of King Lisuarte mentioned, and that the lady was sick of love, the tears came into his eyes, and he said, I pray you, ladies, tell me the name of the knight whom she loves. They answered, He is not of this country, but is one of the best knights in the world, excepting only two who are of the greatest renown.—By the faith you owe to God, I beseech you tell his name, and the name of those other two.—We will tell you, on condition that you in return tell us if you be a knight, as you seem by every thing, and likewise what is your name. I am content, said he, that I may know what I ask.—Know then, the knight whom our lady loveth, is Don Florestan, brother to the good knight Amadis of Gaul, and to Don Galaor, and son of King Perion of Gaul and the Countess of Selandria. Now, quoth he, you tell me truly of his goodness, for you cannot say so much good of him as he deserveth.—Do you then know him?—It is not long since I saw him in the house of Briolania, for I saw the battle there of Amadis and his cousin Agrayes against Abiseos and his sons; after which Florestan arrived there, and I heard Don Galaor speak great things of his prowess, for they say he fought with him.—Yes, replied the damsels, it was in that battle they knew each other, and then Florestan went away.—What! is this the lady of the island where that battle was fought?—The same.—Her name is Corisanda. I do not now grieve for her so much, for he is so gentle and of such disposition, that well I know he will do whatever is her pleasure. Now then, said the damsels, tell us who you are. Gentle damsels, replied he, I am a knight who have had more pleasure in the vanities of the world than falls to my lot.

for which I am now suffering, and my name is Belte-nebros. God's mercy upon you ! said they : we must now go play to our lady.

After they had sung to her awhile, they told her what Belte-nebros had said of Florestan. Ah, call him here, cried she, he must be some good man, since he knows Don Florestan. They brought him to her. These damsels, said she, tell me that you have seen and that you love Don Florestan : by the faith you owe to God, tell me all you know concerning him. Belte-nebros then related how he had gone with his brethren and Agrayes to the Firm Island, and that he had not seen him since. Tell me, said Corisanda, are you akin to him, for you seem to love him much ?—Lady, I love him for his great valour, and because his father knighted me, wherefore I am greatly bound to him and his sons ; but I am very sad for the tidings which I heard of Amadis before my coming here.—What are they ?—I met a damsel in a forest by the way side, singing a sweet song, and I asked her who had made it. She answered, A knight, to whom God give more comfort than he had when that was made, for by the words it seemed he had suffered great wrong in love, and complained heavily. I stayed two days with the damsel till I had learnt it. She told me that Amadis did show it her, and that he wept at the time and was in great misery. I beseech you, quoth Corisanda, teach it to my damsels, that they may sing and play it to me. That will I, said he, for your own sake, and for his sake whom you love ; albeit that is no time for singing, nor for aught that is matter of joy. He then went with the damsels to the chapel, and showed them the song which he had made : his voice was of rare sweetness, and now his

melancholy made it more soft and in unison ; and the damsels learnt the song, and did sing it to their lady, who took great pleasure to hear them. Corisanda remained there four days ; on the fifth she took leave of the hermit, and asked Beltenebros if he should remain there long ? Lady, till I die, he replied. Then she entered her ship, and made voyage to London.

Lisuarte and the queen received her in a manner suitable to her high rank, and lodged her in the palace, and the queen asked her if she had any suit to Lisuarte, that, if so, she might further it. My lady, said Corisanda, I thank you for the favour ; but my coming is to seek Don Florestan, and because tidings from all parts reach this court ; I will remain here some time till I hear news of him. Good friend, replied Brisena, that may you do so long as you think good ; at present we have no other news of him, than that he is gone in search of his brother Amadis, who is lost, we know not for what cause ; and she then related how Guilan had found the arms. Hearing this, she began to weep, and say, O Lord God, what will become of my lord and friend, Don Florestan ! for he so loves that brother, that, if he finds him not, he also will become desperate, and I shall never see him more ! The queen having great pity, consoled her, and Oriana, who was by, hearing the love she bore to the brother of Amadis, had the greater desire to honour her, and accompanied her to her chamber, and learnt from her all her love. Thus talking with her and Mabilia of sundry things, Corisanda related how she had been upon the Poor Rock, and found a knight there doing hard penance, who had taught her damsels a song made by Amadis in his affliction, and the words, she said, were very sad. My good friend

and lady, quoth Mabilia, beseech you let your damsels sing it ! I desire much to hear it, seeing it was made by that knight, my cousin. The damsels then sung the song, which it was a pleasure to hear, and yet so sorrowful that it made those sad who heard it. But Oriana, who understood the complaint, could no longer abide there for the shame of the tears that she felt flowing, and she went to her chamber. Mabilia therefore said to Corisanda, I see Oriana is unwell ; she hath for courtesy remained here longer than she should : I must go and assist her ; but tell me what manner of man was he whom you saw upon the Poor Rock of the Hermitage, and what did he know concerning Amadis ? She then told her how they had found him, that she had never seen a man so comely in grief and being wasted, nor one of such manners in poverty, nor a man so young of such discourse and reason. Mabilia forthwith went joyfully to her friend's chamber. He who asks news, said she, sometimes learns more than he expects : the melancholy man who lives upon the Poor Rock, and calls himself Beltenebros, by all that I can learn from Corisanda, must be Amadis. Oriana lifted up her hands, O Lord of the world, grant that it be true ! Dear friend, tell me what to do, for I have neither sense nor judgment : unfortunate wretch, who by my own folly and intemperate passion have lost all my happiness ! Mabilia turned away her face, that the tears might not be seen : We must wait for the damsel's return, said she ; if she should not find him, leave it to me : I am sure he is this Beltenebros.

END OF VOL. I.

